ARTE·ET·MARTE
a' 3'
des
Adelen
hohteutshe
sprahkonst
für di
English-
en.

BIBLIOTHECA·BODLEIANA

a ! 3 !

des

EDELEN

Hohteutthe

SprahKonst

vor di

ENGLISH-

EN.

BIBLIOTHECA · BODLEIANA ·

THE HIGHDUTCH

MINERVA A-LA-MODE

OR

A PERFECT GRAMMAR

never extant before,

whereby

THE ENGLISH

may both

easily and exactly

learne

the Neatest Dialect of the German

MOTHER - LANGUAGE

used thoroughout

ALL EUROPE;

most humbly dedicated.

TO HIS ROYAL HIGHNES

PRINCE

RUPERT

COUNT PALATINE OF THE RHINE

DUKE OF BAVARIA AND CUMBERLAND

VICE-ADMIRAL OF ALL ENGLAND

KNIGHT OF THE MOST NOBLE ORDER OF THE GARTER

CONSTABLE OF

HIS MAJESTIES

CASTLE AND HONOUR OF WINDSOR

AND ONE OF

HIS MAJESTIES

MOST HONOURABLE

PRIVIE COUNCIL

&c.

by

HIS MOST ILLUSTRIOUS

HIGHNESSES

most humble and most
obedient servant,

the Author.

LONDON, printed in L. BRITAIN, and to be sold at the Rabbets and Harrow in Jacksons court Blackfrayer. 1680.

CONTENTS.

THE PROLEGOMENA doe here comprehend (in lieu of a Preface) some Testimonies of several great and learned Men concerning the Knowledge of Languages in general, and particularly of the Excellency of the Highdutch

most

Copious and Significant,
Majestick and Sweet,
Perfect and Pure,
Easie and Usefull,
Antient and Universal

Toung.

the Treatise it self is divided into Three Parts:

GRAMMATOLOGIA

handling of

Letters and Syllables.

Sect. Page

Part the first consists in

Chap. I. Orthophonia

1 Figure, Number and Place of all the Letters here used - - 1.

2 Vowels and their Sound - - 2.

3 Consonants and their Pronunciation - - 6.

Chap. II. Orthographia

1 Composition of Letters into Syllables and Words - - 15.

2 Separation of Words into Syllables - - 18.

3 Abjection of Letters in pronouncing, and Shortning of Words in writing - - 20.

Chap. III. Orthotonia

1 Quality and Quantity of Syllables - - 24.

2 Accent of Syllables - 29. with some Objections answered - - 36.

3 Pointing between Words and Sentences - - 42. with a Pattern of the Highdutch Pronunciation according to the English Spelling - - 43.

ETYMOLOGIA

treading of

Words considered by themselves without Construction.

- Gendre - - - - - 46.
- Motion - - - - - 59.
- 1 Diminution - - - 62.
- Degrees of Comparison - - 63.
- *I. nominal*
  - Regular Formation of Cases in both Singular - - - - - 67.
  - 2 and Plural Number - 72.
  - with some Examples thereof - - 80.
  - 3 irregular Declension of the Vice-nouns - 82.
- *the second consists in Derivation*
  - *II. verbal*
    - Auxiliar Verbes - - 88.
    - 1 with those of the Greater Anomaly - 95.
    - Regular Formation of the Actives - - - 102.
    - the Passives - - 108.
    - the Reciprocks - - 110.
    - 2 the Neuters - - 111.
    - the Impersonals and the Inchoativs - - 112.
    - the Frequentativs and Diminutivs - 113
    - Irregular Verbes of
    - 3 the Less Anomaly - 114.
    - with a compleat Table thereof - - 120.

III. particular
1 Domeſtick and Homeborne - - 131.
2 Foreign *or* ſeeming to be Foreign - - 138.
3 the Onomatopœia or the Right Way to make both New and Compounded Words - - 160.

ORTHOLOGIA

and

IDIOMATOLOGIA

ſhewe

the Art how to connect Words in writing or ſpeaking good and true Senſe, that we doe not commit either a Solœciſme, or a Germaniſme and Angliciſme.

the third conſiſts in
I. construction of
1. the Nouns - - - 163.
2. the Verbes - - - 166.
3. Particles - - 171.
II the German
III the Engliſh
Idiomes - 177.

TESTIMONIA

Summorum quorumdam Virorum *loco* Præfationis *adducta*

de

Linguarum Notitia *in genere*, *maxime vero de* Germanicæ *insigni* Præstantia.

Francis Bacon *in his XVIII. Essay*:

He, that travelleth into a country, before he hath some entrance into the language, goeth to school, and not to travel.

D. Edm. Castellus in sua oratione inaugurali *p. m.* 5. in uno idiomate Conditoris nostri celebrare laudes, honoris summum est vastigium; in pluribus igitur quanto magis? enimvero non vir tantum appellandus est ille unus ac singularis, sed potius hominum cœtus & Ecclesia. Tot sustinet personas (S. Hieronymi verba sunt) quot callet quispiam dialectos. Dona linguarum novae progeniei (Christianam intelligo) non antea desuper data fuerunt, quam unigenitus Dei filius illuc ascenderat, in pristi-nam ac primordialem exuscitatus gloriam. Statui exinanitionis atque diminutionis suæ conveniebat munus conferre prædicationis, non ita πολυγλωττίας, quasi hoc magis inter Christi esset Regalia. Fuit sane inter χαρίσματα ad Templi spiritualis ædificationem spectantia maxime, nec omnino

vulgaria, intimis ac præaliis illius κεχαριτωμένοις præcipue reſervata.

D. Georg. Henilhius *in Præfat. Theſauri: Germanica lingua tanta excellit antiquitate, ut originem ab ipſa Babylonicæ turris ædificatione ducat; tanta puritate, ut ſola virgo illibata dicenda ſit; tanta amplitudine, ut nullis terminis circumſcribi, ſed ubivis potius peregrinari videatur; tanta denique tum brevitate tum copia, ut copiam in brevitate et brevitatem in copia nulla fere dicendi vis nullaque copia pro dignitate ſatis laudare atque extollere poſsit &c.* das iſt:

di Teutſhe Haupt - ſprahe iſt di vortrefflihſte a'm altertume, denn ſi ire urankunft bei dem Babyloniſhen Turne genommen; di vortrefflihſte an lauterer reinligkeit, ſo gar daſs ſi alleinig di keuſhe unbeflekkte Jungfrawe zu nennen; di vortrefflihſte an weite und rœumigkeit, dero grœnze unumſloſsen, ſondern vilmer weltweit erſtrekket ſind; di vortrefflihſte an der kůrze und doh di vortrefflihſte an der menge, alſo gar daſs keine kraft noh überfluſs eines wolredenden mundes ſattſamlih und nahrhafter würde loben und erhœben kœnne diſer (der Teutſhen ſprahe) überflůſsigſte kůrze und hinwider di kůrzeſte menge und den reihen-eſten überfluſs.

Joh. Gorop. Becanus *lib. 2. Hermathenæ: in Germanica lingua omnia vocabula primogenia ſunt monoſyllaba eorumque tanta * copia*

ut in ea interpretanda nulla unquam exiſtat ſententiarum diverſitas, quam frequentem apud Hebræos eſſe nemo diffitetur. hac igitur parte lingua Germanica Hebraicam vocum copia, Græcam & Latinam brevitate vincit, in qua alteram perfectiſſimi ſermonis laudem collocamus. ut autem et breviſſima eſſet et copioſiſſima, quod mirabile videtur, inde conſecuta eſt, quod pluribus conſtet elementis, quam ulla cæterarum. diphtongos enim plures multo habet, quam aliæ, & omnes pariter una conſonante ſuperat, quam duplex digamma licet vocare. quanto autem plures ſunt literæ, tanto plures erunt earum complexiones et inde plurium vocum diſcrimina &c. Idem ibidem: *Profecto non video, quid ad laudes linguæ Germanicæ ulterius addi poſſit. Lucidiſſima eſt nullaque orationis ambiguitate impedita; eadem rurſum omnium breviſſima; eadem copioſiſſima, qua de parte lucis eſt origo; eadem leniſſima minimaque organorum moleſtia proferenda; eadem hominem maxime idoneum reddit ad quamvis aliam et addiſcendam & bene modulandam. numquid aliud adhuc deſideratur ad ſummam linguæ perfectionem? equidem libenter et obviis manibus herbam ei porrigam, qui me docebit, usquam gentium linguam ejusmodi inveniri, quæ pluribus una dotibus ſit ornata. contra mihi concedi rogo, quod optimo jure poſtularem, ut pari ratione tantisper mihi liceat ſermoni noſtro vernaculo palmam et primas aſſerere, dum quis hæc omnia ſimul in una eademque lingua*

monſtraverit &c. d. i. ih kann warhaftiglih niht erſeen, wi mann immermer zu dem würdigen lobe der Teutſchen ſprahe ein merers hinznetuen kœnne; ſi iſt di helleſte und klærlihſte, wirfet von ſih weg alles ungewiſse, zweifinnige und verwirrete weſen; ſi iſt di allerkœrzeſte und doh di allerwortreihſte; ſi iſt ſanft und gelinde; ſi flœſet von der zungen lihlih und mit luſt; ſi alleine mahet einen menſhen geſhikt und bekwæm allerlei geteen und ausreden nah zu ſprehen, und auslænd-iſhe ſprahen reht zu reden. es ſage einer, wer es kann, ob auh noh was übrig ſei von der hœhſten vollbommenheit einiger ſprahe? wollan, ih will überwonnen ſein, wa mih einer læren kann, daſs irgentswa einige ſprahe vorhanden ſei, welhe mit mererm kunſtſmukke und beſs-erer vollkommenheit ausgezîret ſei. i'm gegenfalle aber kann ih ja mit gutem rehte fodern, daſs mir ſo lange vergœnnet ſei, unſerer Teutſhen ſprahe di oberſtelle über alle zu geben, biſs ein ander aus einer andren ſprahe nœtlig hervorbringen wird alles das, was ſo nœtlig und reihlih inn unſerer befindlih iſt. * Simon Stevin *in Germanica lingua collegit* 2170; *in Græca vero* 265, *& in Latina* 163. Claude Duret *en Treſor de l' hiſtoire des langues de cest univers: La langue Alemande eſt un parler ample & copieux de vocables & mots propres & ſignificatifs, & mes-*

idoine à recevoir et former quelque parole que ce ſoit &c.

Petrus Scriverius de lingua Germanica:

Tael ongelooflick ſoet, Princes van alle taelen,
geboren om de kroon van anders hooft te halen,
vol ſins, vol deftigheits, vol luyſters, lank en ruim,
en die wel miſſen kan het over-zeeske ſchuim:
tael rick en onvermengt; tael om den toon te tragen;
Godin die niet behoeft een woort te leen te vragen
en halen tot uw hulp; tael van geluckich ſchlag,
die gans Europa dor den taelen trotzen mag;
ſchier d' outſte die men vindt, niet oud te weder-leggen;
hy booge van de zyn, die will; wy ſullen ſeggen,
dat onſe tael de haer ſo veel te bovem gaet,
als van de ſwarte nacht de helder sonne ſtaet.
en om dat wy den trotz van Vrankrick hier anraken,
ſo ſegt haer, dat well eer haer volkeren dus ſpracken:
die tael, die daer nu is, di komt van fremd geſpuis
en uit een ander hoeck geſproten, leit daer t' huis.

Martin Opiz *in ſuo Ariſtarcho: ingenium verborum noſtrorum et tractus ſententiarum ita decens eſt, ita felix, ut neque Hiſpanorum majeſtati, neque Italorum decentiæ, neque Gallorum venuſtæ volubilitati concedere debeat.*

d. i. es ſind di wœrter, dero fügungen und kunſtmæſig-geordnete ſprühe inn der Teutſhen ſprahe ſo geſchikklih, fein und

wolſtændig, daſs ſi der Spaniſhen praht, der Wælthen zirligkeit und der Franzoſen liblihen geſwindigkeit inn keinem nihts bevor geben.

Becanus *ſupra dictus paſsim in ſuis ſcriptis: Lingua Germanorum eſt ſubtilis ſtructura; admiranda ars & fabrica; res plena myſteriis; arcana locutionis et excellentiſsimas ſignificandi rationes habens.* d. i. di Teutſhe ſprahe iſt ein künſtlih ſhœnes gebæu; eine wunderreihe kunſt und volle gereit-ſhaft; ein werk voller geheimnüſse; eine verborgene kraft der rede, da di reinlihſten und vortrefflihſten urſahen irer andeutungen ſein.

Wenerus, JCtus *in præfat.*

Linguæ Germanicæ dignitas atque ornamentum univerſo jam orbi innotuit; paucis enim abhinc annis ita crevit, adeoque decorata atque exornata eſt, ut nullius rei et additamenti egeat; ea facilitate ac commoditate ſcribi poteſt, ut neſciam, an non omnibus aliis anteferenda &c. d. i. di würde und hoheit der Teutſhen ſprahen iſt numero der ganzen welt offenbar worden; denn ſi hat biſsanhero innerhalb wenig jaren inn irer zire und irem ſmukke alſo zugenommen, daſs ſi an keinem mangel, und des fremden weſens niht nœtig hat; ſi kann ſo ſhikklih und mit ſolher füglihen leihtligkeit geſhriben werden, daſs ih meine, ſi ſei dannenhero allen anderen vor-zu zien.

Goropius: *Linguæ Germanicæ primus architectus eam dedit literarum pronunciationem, quæ quam minime vocalia inſtrumenta fatigaret, omnem aſperam eorum colliſionem, omnem flatum vehementiorem, omnes ſibilos acutiores, omnem ex imis præcordiis ſuſpirationem, omnia denique quæ extrema, in dentibus, in labiis, vel in gutture, vel in palato, vel in lingua videri poſſunt, diligenter evitans.*

Scrieckius Rodornius Finnius *in ſuis Operibus: Et ut hactenus e Græca et Latina lingua omnia deducere et probare ſunt conati, tamquam rerum univerſitas duobus hisce tantum columinibus niti debuiſſet, vice nunc verſa, lingua Teutonica per conſonantiam Hebraicam ipſis Græcis et Latinis præluce-bit, eisque latentem ſuam originem non tantum aperiet, verum etiam eorum ſequaces in Originibus, Naturaque et rerum Hiſtoriis ad unum errantes in viam, vel invita et reluctante ignorantia reducet &c.* d. i. wiwol mann ſih biſshero ſer bemůet, faſt alles und ides aus der Grihiſh- und Lateiniſhen ſprahe ab-zu leiten und da-heraus zu beweiſen, niht anders als ob di allgemeinheit der dinge einzig und alleine daſelbſt gegrůndet wære: ſo ſoll

dennoh numero i'm gegenteile di Teutſhe ſprahe durh zuſtimmung der Hebræiſhen, den Grihen und Lateinern ſelbſt vorleuhten, und inen niht alleine iren eigenen verborgenen Urſprung und Ankunft entdekken, ſondern ſoll auh ire folger und vertreter, di biſshero inn den Urankünften, inn den natürlihen dingen und inn dem geſhihtweſen ſæmtlih geirret, auh wider allen troz und alle gewalt der unwiſsenheit, auf den rehten weg bringen.

Idem: *Sæpe repetivimus, nec ſatis repeti poteſt, totius univerſi antiquiora nomina apud Chaldæos non ſatis proprie, apud Græcos et Latinos nullo modo ſignificari: Hebraice interea et Teutonice omnia propriam ſuam oſtendere eſſentiam et apparentiam.* d. i. diſes haben wir oft beweislih geſagt, kann aber dennoh niht zu'r gnüge geſagt werden, daſs di gar alten namen aller weltſtükke inn der Chaldæiſhen ſprahe niht gar eigentlih, inn der Grihiſh-und Lateiniſhen aber gar nihts niht, inn der Hebræiſh-und Teutſhen ſprahe aber auf's eigentlihſte andeuten der dinge vorbild, augenſhein, eigenſhaft und weſen.

Idem: *dum quæro et ſcrutor poſt incredibilem in tali rerum oceano fluctationem, admirandam tandem ſed ſimplicem inter exiſtentias naturales, interque linguam Hebraicam et Celticam, ſive Teutonicam, ſive Scythicam, ſive Belgicam (quæ una eſt) de-*

deteri consonantium et convenientium, et omnia secundum Teutonicum et Hebraicum significare. d. i. inn dem ih ſtets nahſinne und das ſprah-weſen vo'm anfange biſs zu'm ende durhdenke; ſo habe ih dennoh endlih nah ſer vilen zweifelhaften anſtœſſen erſpüret und entdekket di wunderreihe verwandnüſs und zuſtimmung zwiſhen dem natürlihen weſen und der Hebræiſh- und Teutſhen ſprahe, und daſs alles ſeine klare ausdeutung und verſtand habe nah deutung der Teutſhen wœrter.

Cluverius *de German. antiq. lib.* 1. *male ac parum perite non modo exteri homines, ſed et quidam Germanorum a Romanis themata Germanica deducunt, cum ipſi verius Romani a Germanis acceperint poſterioribus ſeculis: quemadmodum et militaris diſciplina nonnulla, ut patet ex Vegetio et Marcellino et aliis ejus ævi authoribus, et in his maxime dignitatum vocabula, ducatus, comitatus, Romanis antea ignota, quæ et ipſa imperiti noſtri homines a Romanis no, habere docent &c.* Idem ibidem: *ſed nec eorum judicium probandum, qui ubi aliquod vocabulum in lingua*

Germanica occurrit, quod vel Latino vel Græco vel Hebraico vel Persico vel alius cujusdam gentis vocabulo sit par aut simile, protinus exclamant, nos illud inde habere &c.

Scrieckius: *notandi sunt multorum errores, qui, quod multa convenientia invenerint in lingua Græca cum Germanica, putarunt ea Germanos a Græcis mutuasse, ignorantia rectæ originis & antiquitatis.*

Olaus Magnus *lib.* 1. *c.* 36. *ab antiquissimo tempore cum essent Gigantes in terris septemtrionalibus, hoc est, longe ante inventas literas Latinas et antequam Carmenta ex Græcia ad ostia Tyberis et Romanum solum cum Evandro perveniret, expulsisque Aboriginibus, gentem illam rudem ac plane sylvestrem mores et literas docerent,* habuerunt Aquilonaria regna suas literas. *Cujus rei indicium præstant eximiæ magnitudinis saxa veterum bustis ac specubus affixa &c.*

Johann. Magnus (*Olai frater*) *lib.* 1. *hist. cap. de lit. Goth.* *credendum non est, ipsos Aquilonares*

omnino carnisse scriptoribus rerum a se magnifice gestarum, cum longe ante inventas literas Latinas Gothi suas literas *habuerint &c.*

Duret: *l' alphabet des lettres des Gots a estè le premier alphabet des premieres & plus anciennes lettres.*
Idem: *vray est, que les histoires d' Hispaigne asseurent, que la langue Gothique estoit du tout semblable a la langue des Celtes: autres affirment, que c' estoit la mesme langue Teutonique &c.*

Wehnerus *in præf. Observ. Cameral.*
lingua Germanica a lingua Latina tum imprimis a literis et notis Latinis omnino aliena ac diversa fuit, utpote quæ proprias ac Romanis incognitas quasdam contineat literas et diphtongos peculiares.

Wolfgang. Lazius *lib.* 8. *de Suevis*:
non audiendi sunt, qui ante annos 300. primum omnium linguam Germanicam scribi solitam existimant &c.

Besoldus *cap.* 17. *de natur. populor.*
Galli quam plurimas voces Latinas addidicerunt, sed ad formam et constructionem Germanicæ linguæ connexuerunt et pronunciarunt, Latinamque dialectum continuis Germanismis deformatam condiderunt. Frustraque Stephanus

Paſquierus *lib. 7. de recher. c. 2. mixtum, unde verba auxiliaria in Gallicam, Italicam et Hiſpanicam linguam irrepſerint &c.*

Idem *cap. 18. Ipſi Galli, unde ſuas diſtinctiones habeant, neſciunt; ideoque in lexicis ſuis et in etymis indagandis vano niſu mire ſe torquent.*

Glareanus: *i nunc et pete, citra linguæ Germanicæ peritiam, vocum Gallicarum Etymologiam, quam belli ſcribentur elenchi?*

Wolfg. Hungerus JCtus *in vind. ling. Germ.*

Nunquam Gallus tam inepte rimaturus hæc eſſet, ſi vel mediocrem linguæ Germanicæ habere cognitionem.

Scrieckius: *antiqua Gallorum et Hiſpanorum lingua ante adventum Romanorum, per totam Europam varia dialecto fuit Celtica ſeu Teutonica.*

Martinius *et Ludovico Carrio: linguam Germanicam veterem Gallorum linguam fuiſſe ſatis conſtat, ut plane ſint ridiculi, qui, dum illius linguæ rident antiquitatem, ſuam ſibi maternam linguam irridere ſe non intelligant &c.*

Cluverius l. c. ſi quis peritus paulo diligentius linguam Wallorum, qui adhuc ſunt in Anglia, introſpexerit, facile illic multa ac innumera vocabula mere Germanica deprehendet.

et paulo inferius: Idem de *Hibernica* lingua, & item ea, quam in Hispania *Cantabricam* vocant, judicandum cenſeo: nam in hac quoque pleraque aut Latina aut Germanica deprehendi *&c. vid.* Goropius *lib.* 4. *Hiſp. it.* Cambdenus, Simon Stevin, Sbrieckius & alii.

Goropius *lib.* 2. *Gall. p.* 26. Quis ignorat, ſermonem eum, quo nunc Itali vernaculo utuntur, natum eſse e Latina et Germanica lingua, qua Gothi et Longobardi utebantur.

Beſoldus *de linguar. immutat. cap.* 23. *Jus Feudale, quo utimur, abundat usque meris Germanismis et plures voces Theotiſcas habet, quæ ab interpretibus antiquitatum Germanicarum ignaris, miſere torquentur, et ex præjudicio plerumque nobis veræque origini, per ſententiam quaſi adimuntur. vid.* Cluverius *lib.* 2. *de antiq. Germ.* & Wolfg. Lazius *lib.* 10. *de Gothis.*

Scrieckius: *Japhetica ſeu Europæa dialectus perpetua usque traditione ad noſtra usque ſecula devoluta eſt, aliqua ut fit variatione, ſed fundo quoque manente, adeo ut etiam hodie Teutones, Belgæ, Britanni, Dani et Septemtriones eo ipſo utantur &c.*

Duret *p.* 868. *la Langue de Sueſse eſt*

presque ſemblable a la langue Gothique, Danoiſe et Nordvegoiſe, ils ont beaucoup de mots communs avec les Alemans, veu meſme que leur langue eſt iſſue de la langue Germanique.

quod in Bohemia, Slavonia, Hungaria, Tranſylvania, Polonia, Moſcovia *&c.* uſurpetur lingua Germanica, ex hiſtoriis et peregrinationibus abunde conſtat; *Angerius* autem *Busbequius* in quarta Epiſt. Turcica hoc notatu dignum de Taurica Cherſoneſo ſcribit: *non poſsum hoc præterire, quæ de gente accepi, quæ etiam nunc incolit Tauricam Cherſoneſum, quam ſæpe audiveram ſermone, moribus, ore denique ipſo et corporis habitu, originem Germanicam referre &c.*

Albertus Kranzius *in Saxon. lib.* 1. *cap.* 1. Saxonum lingua, ſi ad lucem veritatis res inſpiciatur, ſola ſervat ſinceritatem ſuæ vocalitatis, ut verba omnia puro ſono denunciet, non inverſa ſtridoribus, non contorta diphtongis &c.

Duret pag. 828. *les Habitants de Saxe ſe ſont de tout temps et an-*

ciennetè vantez de parler entre touts les autres Alemands la plus entiere, pure et diſerte langue Alemande.
Juſt. Georg. Schottelius *in ſua Grammatica p. m.* 53.

Sicuti ii, qui de literis bene meriti, quando vigilias ſuas candide proferunt, iniquos Ariſtarchos, atqe etiam eos (quod deplorandum eſt) qui in eo genere nunquam verſati ſunt, ſuſtinere coguntur (ſunt verba hactenus Wolfg. Lazii;) ita fata -li quadam in Germanos inclementia, linguæ Teutonicæ ſplendidiſsima Majeſtas habuit judicem cœcum; ejusdem dulciſsima tonitrua habuerunt judicem ſurdaſtrum, id eſt, ignorantiam hominum exterorum. Tacentibus hactenus Germanis, muſſitantibus iisdem, confitentibus taci -te et turpiter, relinquentibus decus hoc patrium mendaciſsimæ aliorum libidini contrectandum, conſpurcandum, conviciandum. At, ſinent Fata, pellenda tandem cœcitas, excutiendæ tenebræ, conſtringenda rabioſa Dea, cui Tacitus jam olim robur

parvis magnisque civitatibus commune tribuit, quæ hactenus ferreo jugo genium et libertatem Teutiſcæ loque -læ preſsit; eripienda tandem exteris injuſta oſtendatio, vindicandum tandem excellens linguæ Germanicæ vaſtigium.

Druſius *adCriticum α' φιλόλογον.*

Nos, qui (ſublimiori et limatiori) Philologiæ addicti, placentæ non ſumus, ut omnibus placere queamus; nec vero eſse debemus, quum nec nobis omnia placeant.

d. i. wir, di reht grůndlih ſind dem wœrterfleiſ' ergeben,
und inn der toden ſhrift der klugen Alten leben,
ſind keine kuhen niht, ſo idem munde ſmekken;
weil auh niht alles uns gefæll't, was and're hekken.

Votivus Amicorum Adplauſus:

Q.UTINAM·DIGNO.TANDEM.VARO
-NE.FRUATUR
LINGUA.SUÆ.PATRIÆ..CLARA
VENUSTA.BONA!

Grammatologia,

OR

The First Part of Letters and single Syllables.

Chap. 1. of the *Orthophonia.*

Sect. 1. of the Figure, Number, and Place of the Letters here used.

W	*single vowels:*	w*
B	A, E, O, I, U	b
P	a, e, o, i, u	p
V		v
F		f
D	ë, ö, ü	d
T		t
H	*improper dipthongs.*	h*
J, j		y*
G	*proper dipthongs:*	g
K		k
L	au, äi, äu, ei, eu	l
M		m
N		n
R	aw, äy, äw, ey, ew	r
S, ſ		s
=	*improper tripthongs.*	x*
Z		z*

*WE have just as many vowels as consonants, if taken right, none more nor any less, than you find in the table, thirty six in all, placed according to their proper notion, whereof There are five single, and the rest compound; but Here five double marked with *, and thirteen single.*

Sect. 2. of the Vowels and their Sound.

Several of these letters are otherwise pronounced than in English; as,

A *long is pronounced broad, as* A *before* LL *in all i.* alle; *or as* AU *and* AW *in aul or awl i.* ale.

A *short as the English short* O *in hot, pot, &c.*

E *obscure, as the first* E *in better or never; but* E *clear, as the last of the same words; and standing in the end of a syllable is onely half expressed and half mute, as in French, or as in English after* L *and* R; *e. g. fire-scuffle i.* feyer-shaufel, *&c. but over* A, O, U *not at all, being for it self quite mute, which seems to be the reason why the High-dutch do not separately set this* E *either before (as the English in their* ea, eo, eu) *or after (as some of the Latins in their* ae, oe) *the said vowels, but right over them, as some other Latines use so to incorporate it with those two first vowels, that they in the Latin, (and all three in our and the English tongues) make as one onely sound, so likewise one onely character, which two we shall now here be forced to make shift withall for want of a sufficient stock of our own letters.*

Note, the E *half-mute, or (as it is called by the French) feminine, is never here to be used in a substantive after another both vowel and consonant*

whatſoever, unleſs it be of the feminine gender or plural number, where (as alſo in the firſt perſon of the definite modes) of neceſſity it ought to be: e.g. eine frawe *i. a woman*, eine kræe *i. a crow*, di ſee *i. the ſea*, di flœe *i. the fleas*, di ſnee *i. the ſnows*, di ſtraſe *i. the ſtreet*, eine roſe *i. a roſe*, eine feige *i. a fig*, *&c. not* fraw, ſtras, ros, feig, *&c. ſo* der kle *i. trefoil*, der ſne *i. ſnow*, das roe *i. roe*, das ſtro *i. ſtraw*, der has *i. hare*, der will *i. the will*, der jud *or* jûd *i. jew*, der lœb *or* leu *i. lion*, *&c. not* klee, ſnee, rœe *or* rehe, ſtroe *or* ſtroh, haſe, wille, jude *or* jûde, lewe *or* lœbe.

Some dialects, as the Frankonian, Swabian, and that of the Palatinate, ſet this vowel (or inſtead thereof an H, *eſpecially after an* A, O, U, *which are ſometimes doubled) before its foregoing conſonant, according to their lame pronunciation, not without great confuſion of as well numbers and genders, as nouns and verbs: e.g.* lieb *i. love*, ih lieb *i. I love*, ſeel *i. ſoul*, keel *i. throat*, hût *i. hats*, ſeer *or* ſehr *i. ſore*, ih ſhieb *i. move*, di zier *or* zihr *i. ornament*, ih zier zihr *or* ziehr *i. adorn or make fine and handſom*, die ehr *i. the honour*, ih ehr *i. I honour*, die hahr *or* haar *i. the hairs*, die jaar *or* jahr *i. years*, die zaal *or* zahl *i. number*, ih zaal *or* zahl *i. I pay*, ih zæel *or* zæhl *i. I number or tell*; ih bohr *or* boor *i. I bore*, een hner *or* huhr *i. a whore*, *&c. but our dialect hath* libe, (*for* lib *or* lieb *ſignifieth an adjective, and as much as* charus *or* acceptus *in Latin*;) ſele, kæle, hûte, ſere, ſhibe, zire, di ere, ih ere, di hare *and* jare, (*becauſe of the Plurality*;) zale, *for* zal *or* zaal *ſignifieth a tail*; zæle, bore, eine hure.

O *long as the Engliſh* OA *in throat, oak, to groan, &c. or as* O *in alone, ſore, dore, ſtore, &c.*

O *ſhort as the Engliſh* O *in oven, over, love, &c. never as in ſore, ſoft, oft, not, &c.*

I *long as the Engliſh* EE, *e.g. to feel i.* filen, *wee i.* wir, *beer i.* hir, *beer i.* bir, *&c.*

I *ſhort as* I *of the word in i.* inn, *ſtill i.* ſtille, *finger i.* finger, *is i.* iſt, *&c.*

U *long as the Engliſh* OO, *e.g. too i.* zu, *booth i.* bude, *tooth i* zan, *&c.*

U *ſhort as* OO *or* OU *(conſidered in themſelves, without the mixt ſound received from a conſonant following) in blood or bloud i.* blutt, *good i* gutt, *ſtood i.* ſtunde, *could i.* kunte, *foot i.* fuſs, *&c.*

Æ *long as the Engliſh long* A, *e.g. to ſhame i.* ſhæmen, *to lame i.* læmen, *to ſhare i.* ſhæren, *to tame i.* zæmen, *to lean i.* lænen, *but* lenen *ſignifies to lend, &c.*

Æ *ſhort as the Engliſh* EA, *e.g. to learn i.* lærnen, *to earn i.* ærnen *or* ærnden, *heart i.* hærz, *&c. or as* A *ſhort in March i.* Mærz, *ſtarch i.* ſtærke, *ſmart i.* ſmærz, *had i.* hætte, *&c.*

This vowel and the clear E *being both of one ſound, are taken oft one for another, and therefore ſome write alſo* ſheren, lenen, lernen, herz, ſmerz, *&c. the which may very well be done in the primitives, but in the derivatives it ſhould always be kept as well in compoſition with another vowel, as ſtanding alone: e.g.* alt *i. old,* ælter *i. older,* di ældern *i. parents, qſ. the olders,* mas *i. meaſure,* mæſſen *i. to meaſure,* apfel *i. apple,* æpfel *i. apples,* adel *i. nobility,* ædel *i. noble,* baur *or* bawer *i. countryman,* bæuriſh *or* bæweriſh *i. clowniſh,* baum *i. tree,* bæume *i. trees, &c. not as ſome do,* elter, eltern, epfel, edel, beuriſh, beume.

The ſame is to be obſerved alſo of the other two improper vowels, viz. œ *in reſpect to* e *obſcure and* o, *and* ů *in reſpect to* i *and* u, *both in primitives: e.g.* hœben *and* heben *i. to bear or lift up,* ſhrœkken *and* ſhrekken *i. to ſcare,* brœnnen *and* brennen *i. to burn, &c. ſo* ſhiben *and* ſhůben *i. to move,* filen *and* fůlen *i. to feel,* ſliſſen *and* ſlůſſen *or* ſliſen *and* ſlůſen *i. to ſhut,* rihen *and* růhen *i. to ſmell, &c. and in derivatives; e.g.* offen *i. open,* œffenen *i. to open,* tohter *i. daughter,* tœhter *i. daughters,* ſtro *i. ſtraw,* ſtrœern *i. made of ſtraw,* holz *i. wood,* hœlzern *and* hůlzern *i. wooden,* hure *i. whore,* hůriſh *i. whoriſh,* fuſs *i. foot,* fůſſe *i. feet, &c.*

œ *both long and ſhort like the Engliſh* I, *e.g. bird, ſhirt, firſt, &c.*

ů *both ſhort and long as* U *in Cambro-Britiſh or Welch, or as the long* U *in French; but by ſome it is commonly pronounced as the Engliſh* E *long or* I *ſhort in, evil or ill i.* ůbel, *ſin i.* ſůnde, *mill i.* můle, *hill i.* hůgel *or* higel, *to fill i.* fůllen, *to kiſs i.* kůſſen, *&c.*

AU *or* AW *as* OU *or* OW *in Engliſh: e.g. houſe i.* haus, *louſe i.* laus, *mouſe i.* maus, *ſhower i.* ſhawer, *ſow i.* ſawe, *&c.*

ÆI, ÆU, EI, EU, ÆY, ÆW, EY, EW, *ſound almoſt all alike as* I *long and* Y *final in Engliſh: e.g. thine or thy i.* dein, *iſland i.* eiland, *fire i.* feyer *or* fewer, *&c.*

Divers other dialects have as many compound vowels more, proper to every ones pronunciation; as,

AI, OI, OU, UI, AY, OY, OW, UY.

AA, EE, IE, OO, UU, *&c. but all theſe we have here (as needleſs) omitted, provided our ſpelling natural to our dialect be duly obſerved.*

Sect. 3. of the Conſonants and their Pronunciation.

W *and* Y *are two baſtard letters,* viz. *vowels at their fore part, and conſonants at their hinder-part, as being compound, This of the vowel* i *and That of* u, *prefixed before the two initial conſonants, Here before* i, *and There before* v; *neither of which (both ſingle and in compoſition) can abide to ſtand after another letter, without being follow'd by a vowel: e.g.* der Mæi *or* Mæyen *i. the May,* freude *i. joy,* ſih frewen *i. to rejoyce,* der tau *i. the dew,* tawen *i. to dew, &c. not* Mæy, frewde, taw. *but* W *as a meer conſonant may very well ſtand alſo after a conſonant, and in the beginning of a word, (after the Engliſh faſhion and pronunciation) which later place* Y *had formerly in our tongue, as well as it has ſtill in the Engliſh. This letter we uſe likewiſe in the Greek words for an* v *whereſoever it be, to make them differ from our natives, as the Latins and other learned nations do, they are ſometimes taken one for the other: e.g.* fewer *and* feyer *i. fire,* verdæwen *and* verdeyen *i. to digeſt.*

B *after a vowel in the ſame ſyllable, eſpecially before a half-mute* e, *is pronounced as an initial* W *in Engliſh: e.g.* bub *or* bube *i. boy,* beben *i. to tremble,* bleib *or* bleibe *i. ſtay, &c. read as if it were written* bu we, be-wen, blei-we.

V *is pronounced by us juſt as by the Engliſh, that is to ſay, ſofter than an* F, *and harder than* V *in French, where it ſounds like our initial* W.

H *(that moſt abuſed letter of all) in the beginning of a ſyllable is a ſingle aſpiration, expreſſed as the Eng-*

liſh in theſe words, that come from ours: e. g. horn, heart, hunger, hound, &c. never ſo ſlightly as in the original Latin: herb, honour, honeſt, heir, humour.

This character as a ſingle or ſoft aſpiration ought (as here ſhall be taken all poſſible care) not to be uſed after a vowel, as ſome without reaſon, nay againſt their own manner of pronouncing, too often uſe to do: we will write now after our dialect, and as ſome of old and ſtill (as well the Engliſh as the Low-dutch) do; e.g. ſteen i. to ſtay, Belg ſtaen, geen i. to go, Belg. gaen, ſeen i. to ſee, Belg. ſien, ſhreyen i. to cry, Belg. ſchreyen, &c. ſo rue i. reſt, frů or frůe i. early, tuen i. to do, mer or merer i. more, mir i. to me, dir i. to thee, lære or lœre from lare i. doctrine, &c. not ſtehen, gehen, ſehen, ſchreihen, ruhe, frůhe, tuhen, mehr or mehrer, mihr, dihr, lehre or lœhre or old Engliſh (in Spencer) lore. ſee the foregoing Sect. 2. letter E.

Nor after P or T, or any other conſonant whatſoever, except in the Greek words, for the ſame reaſon mentioned above: e.g. Rhetorica, Philanthropia, Thron.

For as our Anceſtors a good while ago left off to write the H after a P, changing it into F; whereas the Low-ſaxonians as well as the Low-dutch and the Engliſh kept onely the P: e.g wafen or waffen, ſhaf, hůlfe, &c. Engl. weapon, ſheep, help. and of old waphen, ſhaph, hulph. whence ſome ſtill write Adolph q.d. adel-hůlf, Erphort, &c. ſo we will here endeavour (and ought) to follow them in the letter TH, as ſome already have done before now, retaining onely T and D ſufficient for our mouth, not uſed to the aſpiration of the TH, as there are others, eſpecially the Engliſh and the Arabick: e.g. tuen or-

duen *i. to do, Belg.* doen, tewer *or* dewer *i. dear,* tor *or* dor *i. dore,* taler (*from* zalen) *i. doller,* rute *or* rude *i. rod,* rot *or* rod *i. red, &c. not as some write,* thuhen, thewer, thor *or* tohr, thaler *or* tahler, ruthe *or* ruhte, roth *or* roht.

but H *the double or hard aspiration standing after a letter in the same syllable (used now by us instead of* CH, *the Greek words excepted, if you will or must make use of 'em, e.g.* Christus, Chrysostomus, *&c.) is pronounced as the English* GH *in, right i.* reht, *sight i.* gesiht, *flight i.* fluht, *&c. yet somewhat harder and in the throat, just as the Welchmen their* CH, *or as the Hebrews their* ח, *and the Grecians their* χ, *which is (but no more than our letter here) a double consonant. see* C.

J, j, *consonant, onely initial, sounds without all aspiration, as the English* Y *in the beginning of words: e.g.* jar *i. year,* Jesus, Joseph, jung *i. young, &c. read as if they were written thus in English,* yaur, Yesus, Yoseph, yoong.

This letter and V *differing both to shape and sound from the other characters, as well as any of the rest, are ranked here amongst the consonants, as the Hebrews do their sixth character, and the Armenians their one and twentieth, which later (viz.) just as ours hangs down under the line of vowels, and has no stop over it self.*

G *is pronounced by some as it is in English before* A, O, U, *and particularly before* e *or* i, *as it is in these English words that come from ours: e.g. to give i.* geben, *to begin i.* beginnen, *gests or guests i.* gæste, *gost or ghost i.* geist, *a gift or guift given to a bride by her parents or a dowry i.* ein braut-gift *or* mit-gift, *&c. and always after* N: *e.g. to singe i.* singen,

hungry i. hungerig, *&c. where it ſounds without all aſpiration, and yet harder than our* J *or the Engliſh* Y ; *but by ſome it is pronounced with a ſmall aſpiration, to make it differ from our* J, *and the double aſpiration* H; *and yet we do not pronounce it here neither with the kiſſing tone of the Engliſh in gentle, general, giant, geometry, or the like words coming from the Latin, Greek, or other tongues.*

M *after another* M *is changed in ſome dialects of ours, as in Engliſh into* B, *which the analogy and derivation does not approve of: e. g.* krumb *or better* krumm *i. crooked,* krůmmer *i. more crooked,* ein kamb *or better* kamm *i. a comb,* kæmmen *i. to comb,* ein lamb *or* lamm *i. lamb,* di lænmer *i. lambs, &c. not* krůmber, kæmben, læmber.

S *is here always pronounced as by the Low-dutch or Engliſh* Z *uſed formerly alſo by the old Frankonians in the very ſame ſound: e. g.* fuzzo *now* fuſs *i. foot,* wazzer *now* waſſer *i. water, &c. whence they of old uſed commonly in the end* ſz *for* ſs, *and* tz *for* ts *or now* z. *which ſome ſtill do as well in writing as printing: e. g.* daſz *i. that,* ſitz *i. ſit, &c. now* daſs, ſiz. *but never as the ſhort and final* s *of thoſe Engliſh words that come from ours: e. g. husband, buſineſs, is, wiſdom, &c.*

X *valuing here* HS, *or (as in Engliſh)* KS, *is never uſed by us in the beginning, unleſs of a Greek or other ſtrange word: e. g.* Xerxes, Xeuxes, *&c.*

C *before* E *and* I, *likewiſe* T *before an* I *followed by another vowel, are both pronounced as* TS, *and elſewhere as in Engliſh ; but we make uſe of them now onely in Latin, or other words derived from thence: e. g* contradiciren *i. to contradict,* concludiren *i. to conclude,* concediren *i. to grant, Cicero,*

contradiction, portion, contribution, &c. read as if they were ſpelled thus, contraditſiren, contſediren, Tſitſero, contradictſion, portſion, contributſion; *not* Siſero, porſhion, *&c. in lieu of theſe two letters, viz.* C *and* T, *when they are ſoft (that is, ſtanding before* E *or* I) *we take as well after a conſonant as before a vowel, the fifth double letter, to wit,* Z, *pronounced now a days as in Italian, or as* TS *in Engliſh; which two letters both to geminate is not more (though hugely and groſly) abſurd, than it is to double their equivalent (in ſhape ſingle, but in ſound and ſtrength double) character* Z, *or any of the Greek* ζ, ξ, φ, χ, ψ, *and the like of other poliſhed tongues. Therefore we write, e.g.* zuzien *i. to tie together,* zerfezen *i. to cut in pieces,* ſezen *i. to ſet,* ſizen *i. to ſit,* kurze hœlzer *i. ſhort woods,* puzen *i. to put: and pronounce as ſome of them were of old written,* tſu-tſien, tſerſets-en, ſets-en, ſits-en, puts-en, kurtſe, hœlts-er. *but not* ſezzen, ſizzen, puzzen, kurzze, hœlzzer, *&c. the which value in pronunciation as much as if they were written after this manner,* ſetſtſen, ſitſtſen, putſtſen, kurtſtſe, hœltſtſer, *as ſome Cacocritticks baſely uſe to do, out of no other ground and reaſon than being either deceived by the old Frankonian and new Italian tongues, or infatuated by a mere fancy to novelty.*

C *when hard (as it is before* A, O, U, *or a conſonant) is changed here by us, as well before a* K, *as before any of the other letters, into* K, *and* QU *into* KW, *with no leſs reaſon than the Latines do uſe either* C *or* CC, *the Grecians either* K *or* KK, *the Hebrews either a* ק *or* ק, *and we our ſelves either* f, l, ſ, *&c. or* ff, ll, ſſ, *&c. according to the vowel preceding either long or ſhort: e.g.* ein kanker *i. a kanker,*

erker *i. priſon*, ein kunſt-ſakk *i. a ſack of arts*, n kindes-kleid *i. a garment for a child*, eine kræu- r-kwelle *i. a well where herbs uſe to grow*, ein kker-bækker *i. a confectioner*, &c. ſo kalb, orn, kommen, &c. *not as of old and ſtill the Engſh*, calb *i. calf*, corn *i. corn*, commen *i. to come*.

but C *ſtanding before the double aſpiration* H, *ſhall nceforward be quite omitted by us, as it was formerly by the old Saxonians every where, and is ſtill this very day by the Engliſh after an* S: *e.g. a fiſh, freſh, to waſh, to wiſh*, &c.

and immediately after an S *the letter* H (*followed any other conſonant but* R *in the ſame ſyllable*) *ſhall well as its* C, *and ſo both together be left out here, it is done not onely in the forementioned dialects, but in the Law-Saxonick alſo and the Belgick, to eſſen the tedeous, and more than jewiſh and ſnakiſh iſſing ſound of the Swabiſh pronunciation, ſlipt by egrees from thence as into ſome others, ſo likewiſe into hat of ours*: e. g. ſlafen *i. to ſleep*, ſporren *i. ſpur*, ipferig *i. ſlippery*, ſtall *i. ſtall*, ſmuzig *i. ſmutty*, maragd *i. ſmaragd a precious ſtone*, ſmeiſen *i. to mite*, ſtille *i. ſtill*, ſnorren *i. to ſnort*, ſteif *i. ſtiff*, preiten *i. to ſpread*, ſwan *i. ſwan*, ſlav *i. ſlave*, plitter *i. ſplinter*, ſhrapen *i. to ſcrape*, &c. *not* ſchlafen, ſchporren, ſchlippferig, ſchtall, ſchmuzig, ſchmaragd, ſchmeiſen, ſchtille, ſchnorren, ſchteif, ſchpreiten, ſchwan, ſchlave *or* sklave *Ital.* ſchiavo; ſchplitter, ſchrapen, *as ſome either in writing or pronouncing love to ſpell, perſuading themſelves, that their words will be the fuller of no leſſer myſteries than grace and emphaſis, the fuller they take both their mouth and their pen.*

Thoſe good men both in ſchools and chanceries, that have the lot to make their whole ſtudy, onely buſineſs, and daily practice, in nothing elſe but in ſpelling letters, and are therefore looked upon by ſome as Grand-maſters of Orthography, moſt commonly uſe to write thus: e.g. ſchnaacke, vieh *or* viehe, ſchwartz, ſchnee ſchneh *or* ſchnehe, *&c. inſtead of* ſnake *i.* ſnail, vi (*of old* fio) *i.* cattel, ſwarz *i.* ſwarthy *or* black, ſne *i.* ſnow: *where every one may ſee, that almoſt the moiety of letters is as needleſs to the good pronunciation, as the fifth wheel would be to a waggon.*

and becauſe not every one has a mind or occaſion to beſtow time and charges upon ſearching out antiquities, to acquaint himſelf with the old ſpelling, there as well as here uſed by us, we ſhall add two examples, but in few words, which will (according to a Spaniſh proverb) be ſufficient for a wiſe and underſtanding man, whereas one that's deceived by a falſe conceit and long uſe, dotes upon the unproportionable ſpelling which he is brought up by, will (though convinced) hardly be perſuaded by all reaſons and books to the contrary, now being ſo deaf as he that will not hear. Mind therefore how ſutable the old ſpelling (as far as it is here in queſtion) be to the pronunciation of our dialect, when Somner in his Etymologicon cites out of the firſt book of Beda's Hiſtory the following words; ih ge ſeo othre æ on minum leomum withfeohtende there æ mines modes: *and the beginning of the Confeſſion of ſins uſed of old by the German Church and ſet before Otfrid's Goſpel-book is this*; ih wirdi Gote almahtigen bigihtig inti allen Gotes heila gon, allero ſuntono, unrehtero githanco, un rehtero worto, &c. *word by word in our dialect* ih ſee andre ee (*now* geſez) an meinen gliden

mit- (wider-) fehtende der ee meines mut -es (*or* gemûtes: *and*, ih werde Gotte allmahtigen beihtig und allen Gottes heiligen, aller ſûnden, unrehter gedanken, unrehter worte; *in the Engliſh word by word*: I ſee an other law of my limbs withfighting the law of my mind: *and*, I am to God almighty confeſſing, and to all Gods holy ones, all ſins, unright thoughts, unright words. *where in the words* geſeo *and æ or* (*as Kilian in his dictionary writes*) ee, *or* (*as Otfrid Matth.* 19.) E. *we ſee left out the needles* H *having after an letter of the ſame ſyllable, the ſound of an hard aſpiration, is in* ih, feohtende, almahtigen, unrehtero *&c. likewiſe in* urſuah *now* urſahe *i. cauſe*, thuruh *now* durh *i. through*, manſlaht *i. manſlaughter &c. of the ſame force was this letter alſo in the beginning of a ſyllable before a conſonant e. g.* hlaford, *inſtead whereof the Engliſh have now Lord i.* groſer herr, Hriſt *i. Chriſt, &c. but afterwards when thoſe that love too well either the immoderate aſpiration, or long words and full lines,* (*to make the reader pay the dearer for their writings*) *put the ſingle aſpiration into the place of the double; this was forc'd to be changed by divers dialects into divers other characters*, C, K, CK, HH, HCH, CH, CHCH, GH, *&c. ſo we find e. g.* Criſt *and* Kriſt *i. Chriſt, in Welch* Ghriſt Criſt Griſt *or* Chriſt, reich *i. rich. Gal.* riche, *Belg.* ryck, *Ital.* ricco, *and in plur.* ricchi *or* ricche; ich ic ick *i.* I, boc buch bœck *i. book, &c. likewiſe* ſprahchlos *and* ſprachlos *i. ſpeech-*

leſs, radalihho *i. honeſt*, unredihaftlihhiu *i.*
that have not reaſon, deomuatliho *i. humbly*,
deomuatlihha pigiht *i. humle confeſſion*, ru-
ahchaloſe *or* ruahhaloſe *i. careleſs ones*, lache-
lahchen *or* lachchen *i. to laugh*, &c. *ſee a*
your leaſure the books written in the Anglo-ſaxo-
nick dialect, a good many whereof are kept alſ
here in the Engliſh libraries.

of theſe conſonants conſidered hitherto, an
made divers compound ones, ſome whereo
being of two ſingle letters, have but a ſingl
ſound like a ſingle conſonant, and ſtand onel
in the end of a ſyllable after a vowel to mak
it ſhort e. g. bb, ff, ſſ, ll, &c. *never in the be-*
ginning as LL *does in Spaniſh nor as* DD, FF,
LL *in Welch. and ſome others, that be as o*
different letters, ſo likewiſe of a mixt ſound
which they give one another, ſtanding onel
either in the beginning of a ſyllable e. g. bl, fr,
ſtr, pfl, kw, &c. *or in its end e. g.* md, ng,
rh, lz, ſht, &c. *or on both ſides e. g.* ft, pf,
tlh, &c. *every one letter of both ſort*
with its vowel whatſoever ought to be pronoun-
ced together, and in one breath, as if it had on
onely character like one of the double conſonants.
ſee the following ſection, and chap. 3. ſect. 1.

'Tis known, that the Hebrews, when they
would geminate a conſonant made a ſtrong
dageſh in the midſt of it, and the Latins uſed
a great letter inſtead of a double e. g. ſuMa,
foSa, *&c. but the Spaniards have ſtill their*
Tilde (as they call it) over the letter N *onely,*
and the Germans uſed till now a ſtroke over M *and*
N *when to be doubled e. g.* koⁿen *i. to come,*

reiien *i. to run, &c. the which we might imitate also in the rest of the letters, and use but a single character marked at the head. this novelty being not so strange to us, as that would be to some, if we should find out (and could agree upon) certain single letters in shape, instead of the compound as well consonants as vowels, made use of hitherto not onely by us, but also by all Europe besides.*

Chap. II. of the *Orthographia.*

Sect. 1. of the Spelling or Composition of Letters into Syllables and Words.

Like as all sublunary things, nay the Moon herself, and the greatest Empires, suffer their either natural or fatal change; so our and every other Language has from time to time some alteration. besides this, our learned Men in the beginning of writing, and afterwards of printing books, were often forced to yield unto the unreasonable proceedings of the Amanuenses and Printers, which they had then as great want of, as these of skill, no less than of fit tools and necessary materials; insomuch that we ought not at all to look upon their sometimes bad spelling as a patern for our imitation, but rather to pity their case and to mend their defect. for the infancy of arts, and the scarcity of commodities they then lived in, must excuse them by all means, but it will not in the least us now, now at this present Age, when all sciences flourish abundantly, and wisdom does not want any commodity.

nor plenty knowledge, to order all things han-
ſomly according to the ἀκρίβεια and exactne
of Arts. We will therefore maugre all o
poſition, and in ſpight of envy her ſelf, ende
vour as we have begun to purge our writings poſ
bly of their innocent faults, which the inju
of time ſucceeding made worſe and worſe, an
are now a days become ſo groſs and enormou
that ſurely neither wiſe Antiquity, nor the no
living learned world (void of prejudice) w
blame us for a ſober and moderate Reformu
tion (which in its ſelf was not a whit more nece
ſary either in Religion or in experimental Phil
ſophy then this is) undertaken here in our tongu
the foundation whereof is ſo well and wiſely la
by its firſt builder almighty God himſelf, th
hardly an other language in the whole worl
(unleſs perhaps the new Philoſophical) can as i
ſome other preheminences, ſo herein be paralle
with it. for here is never a letter wanting, as the
is in that of the Perſians, leaving out ſometim
in writing divers letters, which they add in pr
nouncing; nor is here any ſilent or quieſcen
as we find ſeveral in the Hebrew, Chaldaick
Samaritan, and other Oriental tongues; nor ſupe
fluous neither, as muſt be in the French, Engliſh
Luſitanick and ſome other hybrid ſpeeches upon th
account of derivation. in fine, as our letters men
tioned in the foregoing chapter, are ſufficien
to the expreſſion and pronunciaion of our di
lect; ſo we do always pronounce both vo
wels and conſonants, whereſoever we fin
them. and becauſe none of theſe is ſoundable wit
-out one of thoſe others, as the principal ingre

dients of ſyllables; we do quicken and enliven each conſonant with its next vowel either preceding or following, like the Æthiopians, that never ſeparate any of their ſeven vowels from the ſix and twenty conſonants. For without any doubt, the farther the expreſſion and ſound of a conſonant is from its vowel, the harder is alſo the way of ſpelling, eſpecially for beginners and children, as every one may eaſily find it to be true in his own language, as in Hebrew e.g. Adam, aleph *and* kamez *ſpells* A, dalet kamez *and* mem *ſpells* dam, *&c. in Greek e.g.* Kyrios, kappa Ypſilon *ſpells* Ky, rho jota *ſpells* ri, omicron ſigma *ſpells* os, *&c. in Engliſh e. g.* double v, ach, i,ce, ach *ſpells* which *or* huitſh; er, o, u, ge, ach *ſpells* rough *or* ruff, *&c. in French e. g.* te-e-em-pe-es-*ſp.* tang, *&c. On the contrary, this muſt needs be the neareſt and the cleareſt way of ſpelling, which expreſſes the letters, as they ſound in the very act of compoſition, taking the life and ſtrength from the vowel that they are to bejoyned withall: e.g.* de-e-es *ſpells* des; we-e-ef *ſp.* weſ, e-en *ſp.* en; ha-a *ſp.* ha, te-e-er *ſp.* ter; ka-*ſp.* ka, be-e-el *ſp.* bel; de-e-er *ſp.* der; te-e *ſp.* te, ge-e-en *ſp.* gen. *ſo likewiſe,* ſa-a-ag *ſp.* ſag, e-et *ſp.* et; i-ir *ſp.* ir; re-e-ed *ſp.* red, li-i-ih *ſp.* lih; zu-u *ſp.* zu; wa-a-as *ſp.* was; ma-a-an *ſp.* man; fo-o-or *ſp.* for, de-e-er *ſp.* der, e-en *ſp.* en; mu-u-us *ſp.* mus. *The ſame is done alſo in the compound Conſonants, the members thereof as in pronunciation, ſo in ſpelling*

never ought to be separated one from the oth
e.g. kwe-e-etſh ſp. kwetſh; ha-a-and ſp. han
lu-u-ung ſp. lung, flu-u-uſs ſp. fluſs, ſha
æ-ærz ſp. ſhærz, &c. *but to avo*
the teadious repetition of the whole ſound of
compound vowel, we uſe to divide it here
ſpelling, (though never in pronouncing ſo groſſ
and in writing not a all) taking one part of it
the precedent conſonant, and the other to
following, if there be any e.g. pfa-a-u ſp. pfau, ve
e-en ſp. uen; bræ-æ-u ſp. bræu, ve-e-et ſp. vet
fre-e-i ſp. frei, je-e-er ſp. jer.

Sect. 2. of Dividing Words into Syll bles.

the common Grammar-Maxim is : qui bene diſtinguit, bene docet *i. he, that diſtin guiſheth well, does teach well; and we may here truly ſay: he hath the right knack of a good pr nunciation, the very ſoul of a living languag that well compounds and well divides the lette and words into ſyllables. of the ſpelli we have treated in the foregoing ſection, but the ſeparation of one ſyllable from the othe we obſerve this conſtant rule* : ut vo componitur, ita divellitur; *that is, as word (both in derivation and in compoſition others) is compound, ſo it is divided in its parts for Analogy, and better pronuncia ons ſake e. g.* all-ein, über-all, war-um, ver aht-en, ent-on-ig-en, be-læſt-ig-et, un-au en-bleib-lih-er, *&c. where the addition (thoug it ſignifie nothing of it ſelf) muſt be ſounded it ſelf as well as either the primitive or the firſ

word. for thoſe letters (be they ſingle, double, or compound ones) that the right uſe, and the true pronunciation has joyned, and ſtand together in the end of a word, the ſame ought in no wiſe to be ſeparated one from the other, but may ſtand together alſo in the end of a ſyllable, e. g. troeſt-er, haſs-en, kwetſh-ung-en, veraht-ung, &c. *likewiſe note, that conſidering the feebleneſs of the half-mute* E *never pronounced without an other letters help, it ſhould not (eſpecially being final) be ſeparated from the precedent ſyllable (as the ſtrength which that* E *relieth upon) to make here for it ſelf a perfect and complete ſyllable, as it does in meeter, much like to the Sheva of the Hebrews, the ſound of both being as ſwift to the ear, as lightnig is to the eye. this general rule is not onely uſeful here, but neceſsary alſo in that compendious way of uniting one word with an other by Hyphen, where the laſt ſyllable of the foregoing words (as* mente *in the Spaniſh tongue, when two or more adverbs meet immediately) is always elegantly omitted and pronounced afterwards in the laſt of all, as being the very ſame e.g.* gerehtweiſ-und gütig-er Gott, du geb-und erhalt-er aller ſo-wol ewig-und himmliſh-als zeitlih-und irdiſh-en dinge *i. juſt, wiſe, and good God, thou giver and preſerver of all things, as well eternal and heavenly, as temporal and earthly*; di ſo notwendig-als heilſame vorſpreh-und verſœn-ung unſeres erloeſ-und ſeligmah-ers wird von allen fromm-und glæubig-en ſelen gelib-und ge-

lob-et *i. our Redeemers and Saviours medi-tation and expiation, both neceſſary and profitable is loved and praiſed by all godly and faithful ſouls*; diſes iſt das aller breit-læng und dikk-eſte ſwert; jenes aber das etwas ſmæl-kûrz-und dinn-ere *i. this is the broadeſt, longeſt, and thickeſt ſword, but that is ſomewhat ſmaller, ſhorter, and thinner.*

Sect. 3. of the Abjection of Letters, and the Shortning of Words in Writing.

when You find a word noted with the ſign of apoſtrophus, you may boldly think that it is put here in ſtead of an E, *either alone or with one of the two like conſonants immediately going before, in which caſe the ſign is commonly left away e. g.* getren't *or* getran't, gêlib't *torne, i. loved*, gehoff't, *hoped*, des ſhiff's, *of the ſhip*, des buh's *i. of the book*, des ſand's *i. of the ſand, &c. Elſe without the Apoſtrophus* getrennet, gelibet, gehoffet, ſhiffes, buhes, ſandes. *in diminutivs, and ſometimes (eſpecially in meeter) in other words it ſtands alſo (when written, which we ſeldom do here) in lieu of a ſhort* i: *e. g.* das mæus'gen *i. the little mouſe*, ein glæs'gen *i. a little glaſs*, heil'ger *i. holy*, Teut'ſh *i. Dutch*, befælt'gen *i. to faſten or confirm*, ûberwælt'gen *i. to overpower, &c. where you ſee it moſt commonly ſtand before the ſyllable* G E; *for* mæuſigen, glæſigen, heiliger, befæſtigen, ûberwæltigen, Teutiſh.

we uſe likewiſe or ought to uſe always this token of ſhortning words, when we put away the former letters of the pronouns derer, irer, *and* es *ſtanding after a verb, and of the definite article eſpecially in the maſculine and neuter gender, ſtanding after a prepoſition e. g.* ſi leg'ten 'er vile in's gefæng'niſs, *they put many of 'em into the priſon. for* legeten, irer *or* derer inn das; er rapp't *or* rap't 'er dreye *(ſcil.* æpfel) mit 'r hand aus 'm korbe, *he took three of 'em (ſcil. apples) with his hand out of the basket, for* rappete, irer, der, dem; ir werdet 's glauben, wenn ir 's verſuh't hab't, *you will believe it after you have tried or taſted it, for* es, verſuhet, habet; ſi ging' auf's feld, durh 'n garten, *&c. ſhe went into the field through the garden, for* ginge, auf das, durh den; *ſo we ſay (and ſhould write) for ſhortneſs,* i'm *i.* inn dem, zu'm *i.* zu dem, zu'n *i.* zu den, zu'r *i.* zu der, an's *i.* an das, auf's *i.* auf das, unter's *i.* unter das, ûber'n *i.* ûber den, ûber's *i.* ûber das, *&c. but we never (as the Engliſh and the Low-dutch do) take away a letter by the apoſtrophus, unleſs there precede ſome word or other: e. g.* es iſt war, es iſt *or* wird geſag't *i.* 'tis true, 'tis ſaid, *Belg.* 't (*for* het) is waar, 'tis geſeyt, *&c. and when* E *or* I *ſtand betwixt two conſonants either of the ſame or like ſound, this eliſion or craſis (eſpecially without its ſign) is not at all to be uſed, to avoid obſcurity of words, the ſpelling whereof can not diſtinctly be heard e.g.* des hauſes *i. of the houſe,* des ſhazes *i. of*

the treaſure, der ſinnen *i. of the ſenſes*, e
iſſet *i. he eateth*, es ſneidet *i. it cuts*, du haſ
eſt *i. thou hateſt*, &c. *not* des haus's, ſhaz
der ſinn'n *or* ſin'n, iſs't *or* is't, ſneit, haſt
*where in the two firſt we do not hear all the le
ters, and the reſt of the words may be miſtak
for others*, der ſinn *i. the ſenſe*, er iſt *i. he*
es ſneit *or* ſneyet *i. it ſnows*, du haſt *i. th
haſt.* *ſo much of the ſhorting of ſyll
bles both in pronunciation and in writing. th
abbreviation of ſyllables and words onely i
writing is made by a ſingle ſtop as in Engliſh: e.*

H. *or* Hl.		heilig, heiliger, &c. *holy.*
Hr.		herr, *Sir, Maſter, Lord.*
Fr.		frawe, *married Lady.*
Jfr.		jungefrawe, *married* / jungfrawe, *unmarried* — *mrs.*
-l.		lih, liher, lihes, &c. *-ly,*
næml.		næmlih, *namely, viz. to wit.*
gl.		gleihſam, *qſ. or as if it were*
d.i.		das iſt, *that is.* (*amplu*
a.z.b.		als zu'm beiſpile, *as for ex*
u.a.m.	*read as if they were written*	und anders mer, *and other more.*
u.d.g.		und dergleihen, *and ſuch like*
u.ſ.f.		und ſo fort, ferner / weiter / fort an — &c.
u.ſ.w.		
ſ.d.1.t.		ſie den 1. teil, *ſee the 1. par*
ſ.d. 2.bl.		ſie das 2. blat, *ſee the 2. leaf.*
ſ.d 1.ſ.		ſie di 1. ſeite, *ſee the 1. ſide.*
ſ.d.3.z.		ſie di 3 zeile, *ſee the 3. line.*
a ! z !		*a & z the beginning and the end*

other abbreviations, proper to several sciences and arts, we omit here, adding onely that of the cabbalistick numeration, common as well to our as to any other language. for as the Hebrews and the Grecians, instead of numeral words used the letters of their alphabets, beginning again after the tenth letter: so the Germans (and the other Western Christians) about some hundred years ago left to write the numeral words in common writing and accounts, using since There the figures 1,2,3,&c. which they learned of the Arabians, and these of the Indians, but in grave writings of concern, and upon certain occasions, they still make use both of the numeral words, and onely of seven peculiar letters of their alphabet, as the Latins did, viz.

Germ. E, I, A, S, O, W, U,

Latin. I, V, X, L, C, D, M,

Arab. 1 5 10 50 100 500 1000

as for example,

gib' uns doh, Herr! den ædlen friden wider

or

Gott gibet uns den ædlen friden wider.

where either of the verses does contain the number

1 6 8 0.

Chap. III. of the *Orthotonia*, or the Right Modulating of Syllables and Words.

As Orthophonia and Orthographia handle of Letters and Syllables considered in their

Eſſence: ſo Proſodia treateth of Syllables in the Quality and Quantity, that is, how to ſound and to pronounce the ſame right with their natural tone and proper accent, which is to make a ſyllable in a word long or ſhort, ſoft or ſharp, without which the learner cannot know, how to pronounce the tongue, much leſs to be underſtood when he ſpeaks it; whereby he ſhall not onely be disgraced, but driven alſo to beſtow longer time in forgetting that ill touch taken up, than he might be in going forward in learning ten times as much. the which being carefully looked unto at the firſt, can not but much adorn the ſpeaker making himſelf underſtood, as well as giving himſelf exceeding comfort in going forward when he knoweth, that he ſingeth true harmony eſpecially when he well obſerves the pointing annexed thereunto.

Sect. 1. of the Quality and Quantity of Syllables, *i.* of their either ſoftneſs and length or ſharpneſs and ſhortneſs.

a vowel is then here ſaid to be long, when it take longer time to pronounce it; and ſhort when ſhorter time. Each of the ſingle vowels and of the improper diphthongs is ſoft and long unleſs followed by a double or a compound conſonant; or elſe in ſome particles, and all the final terminations of polyſyllabicks having but one conſonant, which ends the ſyllable, where the vowel is pronounced ſharp and ſhort; e.g.

ſoft and long:	*ſharp and ſhort:*
das *hoc*, lam *lame*, wal *choice*, ſtal *ſteel*, haken *hooks*, kan *boat*, kal *bare*, blaſen *to blow*, al *eel*, ale *awle*, ſagen *to ſay*, wagen *wagon or to venture*, faren *to ride*.	A daſs *ut*, lamm *lamb*, wall *wall*, ſtall *ſtable*, hakken *dig*, kanne *can* kalt *cold*, verblaſſen *to become pale*, all *all*, ſahen *things*, wahen *watch*, farren *bullocks*
kæme *came*, læmer *lamer*, hæsgen *little hare*, kæler *barer*, fælen *to fail*.	Æ kæmme *combs*, læmmer *lambs*, hæſsgen *hatred*, kælter *cold* fællen *to make fall*.
den *hunc*, wen *whom*, her *hither*, weſen *eſſence*, ſhelen *to pare*.	E denn *for*, wenn *when*, herr *ſir*, weſsen *whoſe* ſhellen *little bells*.
hœle *hole*, grœſer *greater*, ſhœſe *laps*, hœrer *hearer*.	œ hœlle *hell*, grœſser *greater*, ſhœſse *ſhoes*, hœrner *horns*.
ofen *oven*, roſe *roſe* wol *well*, dem ſone *to the ſon*, oder *or*, ih wone *I dwell*.	O offen *open*, roſſe *horſes*, wolle *wooll*, ſonne *ſun*, otter *odder*, di wonne *pleaſure*.
ſiden *to ſiede*, ire *her*, ſtil *ſtiel*, ſhaubine *theatre*, ime *to him*, in *him*, dinen *to ſerve*, wiſen *meadows*, ſig *victory*, dir *to thee*, wider *again or toward*.	I ſitten *manners*, ih irre *I err*, ſtillen *appeace*, binne *or* imme *a bee*, inn *into*, dinnen *to thinne*, wiſſen *know*, ſih *him ſelf*, dirre *dry*, widder *ram*, gewitter *ſeaſon*.
kůſen *to chuſe*, flůſ-	ů kůſſen *to kiſs or a bil-*

or fliſen *to flow*, fůlen *or* filen *to fele*, můter *more weary*, fůr *before* hůte *hats*.

flůſſen *or* fliſſen *flow*, fůllen *to fill*, můtter *mothers*, fůrſt *prince*, hůtte *hutte*.

das mus *or* mos *moſs*, futer *load*, di buſſe *repentance*, ſnuren *ſnares*.

U wir muſſen *or* můſſen *we muſt*, futter *food*, ih buſſe *I buſs*, ſnurren *to ſnort*.

obſerve 1. *thoſe words and ſyllables, (be they particles or final terminations, ſignifying of themſelves nothing) from whence no other word or ſyllable can be derived, or the vowel whereof (if they admit any derivation) remains ſoft and long; they have always one onely conſonant* e. g. mis-ver-ſtand, unver-ſtænd-ig, un-ver-ſtænd-ig-er, un-ver-ſtænd-ig ere, un-ver ſtænd-ig-er-en; man *the indefinit particle ſtanding before an impersonal verb*, des *the definit article i. of the*, bis *i. untill*, &c. *ſo likewiſe, as we have ſeen juſt before:* das, den, wen, her, in &c. *to make the three firſt differ in ſpelling, (as the reſt of them do as well in pronouncing as ſpelling, and all together in ſignification) from* deſs *or* deſſen *the demonſtrative particle i. of that*, ein mann *a man*, ein biſs *or* biſſen *a bit*; daſs, denn, wenn, herr, inn, *which laſt word has its derivation in others, as* inner *or* innerhalb *and* binnen *within*, &c. *it is alſo to be found with a double* N *both in old written records and printed books; but being an eye-ſore to ſome, it may (when prefix'd before a word beginning with a*

conſonant) loſe either of the two N, *as other particles, without any mark: e. g.* ingleihen *or* imgleihen, *&c. but the terminations* inn *and* iſs *or* ůſs *have now with ſome a ſingle, and then with others a double* N, *but the later ſpeling is better, becauſe they are capable of receiving an other vowel, the which makes the foregoing* i *or* ů *ſoft and long, if the following conſonant be not geminated, as its ſharp and ſhort ſound does require, contrary to the terminations* en, er, et, *&c. e. g.* můll-er, můll-er-inn, můll-er-inn-en; ſhæf-er, ſhæf-er-inn, ſhæf-er-inn-en; zeug-niſs *or* zeug-niſs, von zeug-nůſs-en *or* zeug-niſs-en, *&c. and that is to be noted every where in the whole derivation of all other words whatſoever, as a ſure and infallible rule, how to know, when and where a ſingle or a double conſonant is to be uſed after ſuch vowels.*

2. *as no compound conſonant of two like letters may ſtand after an other conſonant in the ſame ſyliable, e. g.* freind *friend,* feind *feind or enemy,* find *are,* berg *mountain,* burg *caſtle,* werfen *tothrow,* und *or (as it was ſpelt formerly by ſeveral people* unt *and, &c. never* freindt, feindt, findt, bergk, burgk, werffen, undt *or* unndt *or (which no body can read)* vnndt *&c. this and ſuch like unreaſonable and baſe ſpelling gave occaſion (and its patrons now are acceſſory) to ſome heinous ſlanders laid upon that ſweet language: ſo likewiſe no long ſingle vowel may ſtand either before a double conſonant, or before a compound one of two like letters, which later is to be obſerved alſo of any di-*

pthong, as being of its nature long; but if it fall out, that in derivation of a word they meet in one ſyllable, perhaps contrary to the pronunciation of its dialect, then either the dipthong is changed into a ſhort vowel, e. g. ſhaufelen *or* ſhoffelen *to ſcuffle,* eine ſhaufel ſhoffel *or* ſhuffel *a ſcuffle,* ſaufen *to drink like a beaſt,* geſoffen *drunken,* ein ſaufer ſœufer *or* ſiffel *a beaſt-like drinker or drunken ſot,* pfeifen *to whiſtle,* gepfiffen *whiſtled,* ſmeifen *to ſmite,* geſmiffen *ſmitten, &c. ſee more of them Part* 2. *Chap.* 3 *Sect* 3. *not* ſhauffelen, ſhauffel, ſauffen, ſauffer, *or* ſœuffer, pfeiffen, ſmeiſſen; *or the double conſonant is turned into its oppoſite ſingle, e. g.* ſprahen *or* ſprehen *to ſpeak, Belg.* ſpreken *or* ſpreecken, *where in our tongue a or e characteriſtick is ſharp and ſhort, whence* ein geſpræh *a diſcourſe,* eine ſprahe *a language,* wenn er ſpræhe *when he ſhould ſay, &c. where this vowel is ſtill of the ſame ſound in our dialect; but in others, where it is ſoft and long, the words ought to be ſpelt* ein geſpræg, eine ſprage, ſpræge. *and on the contrary, the ſingle conſonant of a ſoft and long vowel in another dialect or ſignification pronounced ſharp and ſhort, ought to be turned into its oppoſite double or compound; e. g.* der wæg *or* weg *the way,* hin *hence,* di ſtad *or* ſtatt *the city,* di ſtæde *or* ſtætte *the cities,* der ſteg *the little foot bridge,* hůner *and* hůnner, *chickens,* geet hinn-weh *go from hence or away,* ih ſteh' *or* ſtehe *I ſtick, &c. which antiſtæchon or changing letters into others, is very uſual not onely in Engliſh and Low-dutch, but*

alſo in the Greek tongue. laſtly note, that the apoſtrophe doth never change either the quality, quantity or accent, much leſs the letters of a word: g.e. geplag't, gefür't, verſœn't, gelæ't, verlor'n, gefin't, getren't, i'm, über'n, &c. *where the firſt five are as ſoft and long, but the other four as ſharp and ſhort, as they were before the ſyncopation:* geplaget *plagued*, gefüret *leaded*, verſœnet *reconciled*, gelæret *learned*, verloren *loſt*, gefinnet *minded*, getrennet *torn in pieces*, inn dem *in the*, über den *over the*. *For the turning the termination of the paſſive participle in* endet *or* ennet, *this into* ant *and the other into* and, *is rather an anomaly than ſyncope, and therefore we never uſe here the ſign of the Apoſtrophus, as we doe elſewhere.*

Sect. 2. of the Quantity of Syllables and Words in reſpect to their Accents, that make 'em either riſe or fall in pronouncing.

Although we can not paint the tone, nor write the quantity of a ſyllable or word, nor ought we (as ſome preſume) to do ſo much as to expreſs in any of the European tongues the ſigns thereof; yet they are both the greateſt help to the giving a due ſound to words or ſyllables, and therefore it will be neceſſary, that we endeavour here to

make appear, upon what syllable (if there be more than one) the tonick accent is to be placed, that is to shew, which syllable we must lift up, and which suppresse in the pronunciation of polysyllabick words, as we have done in their lengthening and shortening. mind then but this one general rule well: Every true both High- and Low-dutch Radix has its tonick accent, (and that either soft when the syllable is long, or sharp when the syllable is short) in the first syllable, where it still remains both in derivatives and compounds: e.g. Gott God, goettlih godly, goettliher godlier, gottes-furht godliness, Koenig King, koeniglih kingly, koenigreih Kingdom, &c. more examples see in the whole second Part. the same holds also in the compounds of these particles here following, which for emphasis-sake draw upon themselves the accent from those words, they are compounded withall: ab, after, an, auf, aus, bei, durh, ein, fæil, fort, fûr, gegen, her, hinn, hinter, los, mis, mit, nah, neben, nider, ob, oben, ober, samt, ûber, um, un, unter, vor, weh or weg, wider, zu. but the other inseparable particles leave the tonick accent to the first syllable of the words, which they are compounded with: be, em, ent; er, ge, inn or in, re, ver, zer; the very same do also some of the separable ones, when they upon certain occasion lose their emphasis, as durh, gegen, her, hinn, um or umm, &c. construed with another such or like particle; e.g. durhaus, gegenûber, hingegen, hergegen, hin wider, umsonst, zuvor, fûrwar, &c. so likewise durh, her,

ſinn, hinter, nider, ûber, um, unter, wider
&c. *conſtrued with verbs either of a ſpecial and emphatick ſignification, or uſed in reſpect and oppoſition to its contrary verb*; *e.g.* ein mann kann zwar di ganze ſtatt inn einer ſtunde durhfaren, aber niht durhgeen; *a man can in one hour ride, but not go through the whole city.* ir ſoltet niht widerréden, was ir niht zuvorher ûberléget habet; *you ſhould not contradict what you have not before conſidered well.* er wird ſeinen feind niht ſo bald úmbringen als umringen; *he will not ſo ſoon kill as ſurround his enemy.* ein únterrihter *an underjudge*, *and* unterrihter *a teacher*, ûbergeben *to deliver up*, *and* ûberlében *to give*, úmſhreiben *to write over*, *and* umſhréiben *to write about*, &c. *but have a care that you do not miſtake one compound word* (*having the accent in its firſt ſyllable*) *for two ſingle ones*, *the later whereof draws the tonick accent from the preceding particle upon it ſelf*: *e.g.* ſi kommen, daſs ſi zúſeen und zúhœren wollen, niht aber geſeen oder gehœret zu werden; *they come to ſee and to hear, but not to be ſeen or heard.* úbermorgen *the next day*, über mórgen will er ſih niht bekúmmern *he will have no care for to morrow*, &c. be-zeit *or* bei zeit *i. early*, mit reht *i. juſtly*, nebenbei *or* neben bei *i. hard by*, obenhinn *i. above*, *or* oben hinn *i. ſimply*, &c. *in all the derivative words we have none elſe to except*, *but thoſe ſubſtantives that end in* ei *or* eye, *which have the accent in the laſt ſyllable of all* e. *g.* gaſterei *i. feaſting*, hurerei *i. whore-*

dom, ſopperei *i. foppery*, ſlaverei *i. ſlavery*, bübereye *i. knavery*. *as ſeveral little words and prepoſitive particles ſeem to loſe their tonick accent like the Encliticks in Greek; ſo divers long and compounded ones ſeem to have more than one ſuch accent, juſt as in the Spaniſh and the Engliſh tongues e. g.* ein unergründliher glaubens-artikel *i. an unſearchable article of faith*; di übermæſigen auffneidereyen, *the immoderate boaſtings and braggings*, ein unerhœrt-und unbeſchreiblicher chriſten-verfolger, *a cruell perſecutor of the chriſtians*; der aller-unbarmherzigſte *the moſt unmercifull*; der aller-unmenſchligſte *the moſt inhumane*; der allerunbegreiflichſte, *the moſt incomprehenſible &c. we as well as the Grecians and the Latins uſe to accentuate the Ebrew and other orientall propre names indifferently either in the laſt ſyllabe ſave one or ſave two e g.* Elías, Jehóva, Jerúſalem, Bethlehem *&c. but other foreign words as well thoſe, that are naturalized in our toung, as any one elſe diſowned and never or ſeldom uſed by us in good language, doe moſt commonly keep here their accent in the very ſame ſyllabe, where they had it before, as in the Greek* ein ſtratiót, στρατιώτης *or ſoldier*, Georg, γεώργος *a propre name*, ein prophét, προφήτης, eine academíe *or* académie, ἀκαδημία *or* ἀκαδήμεια *&c. in the Latin* di nature, *natura*; eine perſóne, *perſona*, eine familie, *familia*, purgíren, *purgare*, ſtudíren, *ſtudere &c. in the French* monſieur, madame, courteſie, maniere *&c. ſo like-*

wise di majestàt, authoritàt, qualitàt, *&c. immediatly coming either from the Italian* majestáte, autoritáte, qualitáte; *or from the Spanish* majestàd, authoritàd, qualitàd. *not as the English* próphet ácademie, náture, pèrson, fámilie, móunser, mádame, cúrtesie, mánner, májestie, authórity, quálity.

This considered together with our generall rule and other observations preceding, will give us some sure marks and certain signs, whereby not only we, but also any stranger in our toung may presently know the most part of our both suspected and other mungrell words from the true natives. 1. *those, that have a letter contrary to our truly antient and reformed alphabet, are either Greek words, as*

CH *e.g. chronike, Christ chor, &c.*
PH *e.g. phantasei, Theophil, Philip, &c.*
RH *e.g. Rhetoric, myrrhe, &c*
TH *e. g. thron, Dorothee, theater, catholish.*
Y *not standing betwixt two vowels e. g. sylbe. or Latin and such that come from thence, as*
C *e.g. cirkel, carcer, policei, sperance.*
Qu *e.g. conqueriren, queruliren, quæstion.*
SU *before a vowel e. g. suadiren.*
TI *before an other vowell e.g. protection, nation, Gratien, &c* .2. *they that be otherwise spelled, than pronounced in our toung, are most commonly French, though some of'em originaly come from ours e. g. lansquenet* lands-kneht *mareshall from* eine mære *and* ein shalk; *laisser* lassen, *empacquer*, einpakken; *Salique*

from the river di Sale, *Luis or Lodovic from* der leute weg &c. 3. *thoſe polyſyllabick radixes of both adjective and ſubſtantive nouns, that have the tonick accent in the laſt ſyllable, are either of the Italian, Spaniſh or of an other toung coming from the Latin, e. g. patron, matrone, piſtol, parole, inſtrument, teſtament, ſtudent, major, profit, polit, discret, ſubtil, fatal, pedal, reſpect, proſpect, comet, planet, nature, perſone, and ſo forth as many as you will your ſelf, becauſe our language is capable to receive any foreign word, if we had a mind to it. This we have added in conſideration to our language as it was defiled, not as it is (or at leaſt can be) refined, and ought therfore to be kept without all ſuch rubbiſh. for we as well as Mericus Caſau-bonus (in his book of the four Cardinal Languages) diſown this baſtard way of enriching our toung, commonly uſed by the half-learned Latiniſts, petti-foggers and ignorant travellers, that for want of good ſkill in their own toung forget it and (like talking magpies and prating parrats) uſe their mouths to words ſnatched from other languages unknown oftentimes as well to themſelves as to whome they write or ſpeake to, underlining almoſt every each nativ word with a parole a-la-mode from France, or a motto maravigliooſo from Italy, or a Rodomontado ſpaventoſo that is in plain Engliſh an horrible ſpaniſh ly, or elſe with a nonſenſicall word fetcht from Mexico or from either of the Indies, and (which is untollerable) if it be a ſcripture-buſineſs, one or an other either out of a laſie careleſneſs or not well practiced in the pu-*

rity of his mother-toung (wherein his sermon was to be penned) not only makes speak the forementioned nations with an almost Babylonick confusion of languages; but he frightens also out of devotion (if not out of the church and their wits) that sometimes as plain as unlearned auditory of his, with the Syrians, Arabians, Æthiopians, Persians and the Turks themselves, to say nothing of the Latins and the Grecians or other Heathens and Barbarians. Thus they studie to become as ridiculous to the Judicious, as the naked bird laughed at by others in Æsop's fables, or they strife to imitate a beggar, which mending his cloak or coat, takes a patch now of a gray, now of a blew, now of a red and now of any other colour, that he can get, wanting such cloath or stuff, that the whole garment first was made of, but at last in such a variety of raggs scarcely to be distinguished from the rest of the accessory pieces. a notable couple of the like cento's and tailor cushions is set abroad at every-ones view at the 135-142. pages in the description of the fructifying Society, whose most illustrious Head and Patron resides in High-Saxony at Hall the very Athens of the most refined Wits and language, and herein are those so silly and pitiful wretches of ours the more to be blamed either the more serious the subject of their set speech is, or the more their own toung excelles the other languages, from whence they use to begge or rather to robbe that gay gallantrie, without asking any leav eagerly granted by the Conscript Fathers to Tiberius Cæsar, that great and as discrete

as learned Roman Monarch, to set one or two Greek words into letters patent written in the Latin toung for fear its naturall purity should thus be spoiled, which is done in deed by our Popiniays; as far as it layes in their power and corrupted fancy, wherein we leave them, to satisfy also on the other hand forein enimies of our Heroick language, now the only living headspring of tounges the best furnished store-house of words both in respect to the other three languages ἀντογενέσι, and to those, that came from thence, against which manifest truth there start some up out of ignorance partly, partly out of a hatred to what they never learned and therfore never loved, saying, that the Germans as well High-as Low-landers have lost their language or at least the most part of their radixes by shifting their own letters, and by various changing of their spelling, especialy now adayes. to This we answer, that even as a tailor does not shape and cut bodies for clothes, but clothes for the body, and that, which suits one precisely, will be slovenly upon an other: so we write as we pronounce and consequently ought to mend the spelling after the sound pronunciation of the dialect, else they will want proportion, and though we have in former times exchanged some of our old characters with others (differing somewhat from all the rest in the whole world) that are now fitter for writing and printing, as the old ones were then for carving and cutting into brass, stone, horn, wood or such like materials, used by our Ancestors in stead of paper; yet this argueth as little, that we thereby either spoiled or

loſt our tongue and words more than we pramered and poliſhed them, as if one would ſay, that a Mathematician ſpoiles his eye and loſes his object, or a ſoldier his courage and enimy, when this uſes a ſword and the other a perſpectiv, both made in forrein parts, but more expedient for their deſign then thoſe of their own countries making; or, that a man changeth the ſubſtance of his body and of ſome wine by putting this into an other commodious veſſel leaving its dregges behind, and that into an other ſuit of cloaths, more proper to his limbes. did not the very ſame, that we doe, ſome other wiſe and learned nations? pray! look upon the Latin letters and amongſt others upon the H, whether this be not the double aſpiration of the Grecians, as it was made in former times, combined afterwards by the middle croſsſtrok, inſtead whereof the ancient Latins (Terent. Scaur. 11. de Orthograph.) uſed the letter F, e. g. fordeum, foedus, fariolus &c. now hordeum, hoedus, hariolus; and the Spaniards hablar, heno, honda, hermoſo &c. from the Latin fabulari, foenum, funda, formoſus. conſider alſo the renowned Syrians, and though you can not ſay, that their language and words came from Greece, yet you will and muſt confeſs, that their vowels both to ſound and ſhape reſemble thoſe of the Grecians, which got theirs from the Phœnicians by Cadmus, adding to them now and then ſome others more. nor can there be any compariſon between our and the Coptick languages, unleſs it would fall infinitly ſhort of

its self; since the Egyptians took upon them selves both the yoke and dialect of the Grecians in the time of Alexander the Great, and of the Ptolomae's, which later did reigne in Egypt three hundred years together, and Herodotus tells us in Euterpe, that Psammetichus King of the Egyptians caused to be brought into his Kingdome no less than thirty thousand Grecians of the Carian and the Ionian dialects for the better instruction of the Egyptian youth; but the worst corruption and the first cause thereof, why the Egyptians received almost all the Greek letters and a great many words into their own, was the cruelty of the tyrant Cambyses, who after he had subjugated their countrie under his dominion endeavoured to rout together with the profound learning and antiquities of Egypt its very toung, wherein (viz. in corrupting of the language) he was somewhat imitated by William the Norman after the conquest or rather treatie of England. whereas Allemannie or Germanie never tasted any other turnement, no other tyranny, no other conquest, no other injurie then that of time, which all things temporary are subject unto. for as the Teutonians are one of the most ancient nations in the world, having their pedigree and origin from Noah's grand child called in the holy Writ Ascenas, and their name either from their King Tuisco, or as some will, from their old word Teut or Dutt signifying God, in so much that they, who pretend to honour our Houses of Germany by fetching them either out

of the Trojan horſe or the ruins of Rome, doe not knowe, that the ancient Germans are of more worth than the fugitiv Trojans, and the effeminate Romans; as our nation, we ſay, is one of the renowneſt people for antiquity and offſpring: ſo likewiſe were they never ſo rude, ſo wild and ſo ignoble a crue of vile men, as to loſe their mother-toung, as ſome imagine and ubpraid us therwith. for though we can not ſhewe the Magna Charta (if there any was given to our Grand-ſire coming from the mountains of Ararath.) whereby to testify, that our Forefathers as his deſcendents in blood, had alſo his toung; yet to be ſure they were no beaſts, that for want of reaſon have no language; but having it then, they can not be ſaid to have loſt it, becauſe we can not boaſt of as many antiques and romances, as Egypt, Greece or Rome did before their (now almoſt utter) decay and before their tounges were kick'd out of their own home and turned fagabonds with that of the Fewes. yet if the ancient Germans be to blame, they are but for modeſty, becauſe they would rather doe great and heroick actions worthy to be mentioned by their poſterity, then deſcribe them, as being more ſtout warriors and rough ſoldiers than ſoft penmen and ſmooth courtiſans, whereby other nations got this advantage, that they could write of their countriemen, what they ſhould both be and doe (as we reade of Xenophon and his Cyrus,) when they heard, what others practiced in forain countries. the Inhabitants of Germany never

went out of their countrie all at once, as the Ebrewes left Egypt, but they send abroad their armies and emissary legions, whereby they enlarged both their languages and countrie, as Conquerours use to doe; they kept their stock at home, where to live upon and to encrease themselves, alwayes draining up their children as well in their language as in military exercises; they had their own worship and ceremonies, their magistrate and own Kings by fame and warre well knowne already in the Patriarchs time; they were afterwards renowned for victory and valour as well amongst the Grecians as the Romans, in so much that there could be made no peace between those two valiant and potent nations, the Teutonian and the Roman (whose Eagle was then kept up more by the Grecian than their own mighty power) except by an advantagious treatie confirmed with the heavenly truth of the holy Gospel it self, and sealed with the glory of no less then an Empire bestowed upon the Germans in such termes, that their Emperour should be of the Christian Religion on this side, and on the other of German Blood at least by extraction, wisely foreseing, that they in succes of time by such meanes and their matchles vertue and undaunted courage would become sovereign masters what they were then sharers and partners of. but before this so great and so weighty work was done, how many expeditions did they make? how many countries did they overwhelme as a deluge of a raging sea? how many bloody bat-

wise did they fight? how often did they pitch their leaguer in the very heart of the enimies camp? how many warlike nations did they conquere and their countries ransack? the Vandals under Gensaricus possessed themselves first of France, then of Spain, at length of Africk and in Italy of Rome it self; the Franconians and the Burgundians under the conduct of Pharamond seized that part of France, where Paris stands in, which they made their Kings residence, as it is still now adayes; the Gothes under Alaricus seized an other part of it and a part of Italy, the countrie of Aquitain with the seats of the ancient Cantabrians and Celtiberians in Spain, from whence some came under the name of Scythians into Scotland (as the Swabians or Suavians into Swedland or Suevia) and signalized it with the title of a Kingdome of a hard and warlike nation, whilest Albain with his Lombards or Longobards laid hold on Gallia Cisalpina; some of the Saxons on Sibenbürgen or Transylvanie and others viz. the Anglo-Saxons on this fortunate Island of the unhappy Britains, called now by and of its Vanquishers England, which together with Scotland will sufficiently testify, how much our toung has prevailed as well upon their own inhabitans as upon those of other countries conquered by the Germans, in so much that we cannot be said to have lost our toung; yet if we have left behind in other countries, some words no more used by us, why may we not in case of need call them back as well as o-

Prince does his ſoldiers? but when our toung is ſtyled by ſome or other a Rough language, either it is ment of that, which was ſpoken before ſome hundred or thauſand years agoe and in reſpect to the childiſh pronunciation of an effeminate ſpeech; or that good Gentleman did never heare ſpeake Germans but peaſants and thoſe perhaps in a Rough dialect indeed. other objections anſwered ſee, if you pleaſe, in the Preface.

Sect. 3. of the Diſtinguiſhing Punctation.

hither belonges the Pointing, which in reſpect of whole ſentences and words as membres of ſpeech, is the ſame, what there was the Accentuation in reſpect of words and ſyllabes, viz. to know, where to make now a longer and then a ſhorter ſtop, when to raiſe the voice and when to let it fall &c. according to the affections or πάθη of the ſpeakers mind, the names and figures where-of together with their uſe and ſignification explaned at large in other Grammars we leave out, adding only, that our Comma is a ſtroke (/) ſomewhat long made as letters in the midſt of a line from the right hand towards the left, whereas the Latin is a half circle hanging down under the line of letters. 2. the two ſtops of diereſis are needleſs here in our dialect; but 3. the ſign of Irony (commonly omitted by others) is a turned ſign of exclamation, and uſed when we mean an other thing, than we ſpeake, as we read in Terence: huic. mar-

des, ſi quid recte curatum velis; euge bone vir; *ſo likewiſe:* er iſt gar ein tapferer held; *ſpoken of a coward, i. he is a ſtout champion;* ſi iſt di keuſhheit ſelbſten; *ſpoken of a whore, i. ſhe is the chaſtity it ſelf;* wir haben uns wakker verantwortet; *ſpoken of a misbehaviour of ours; i. it is excellently well done by us;*

Here followeth a Pattern of the German Pronunciation.

I.

the XII. Articles of the Chriſtian Catholick faith.	*Pronounce after the Engliſh expreſsion thus:*
ih glaube an Gott den va-ter all-mæht-ig-en ſhœpf-er des himm-els und der erd-en. ih glæub' an Je-ſus Chriſt, ſein-en ein-ig-en ſon uns-ern herr'n, der em-pfang-en iſt von dem H. Geiſte, gebor-en von der jungfrawen Marie, gelitt-en unt-er Pon-tien Pi-lat-en, ge-creuz-ig-et, ge-ſtorb-en und be-grab-en, nider-ge-far-en zu'r hœll-en, am dritt-en tage wi-der-um auf-er-ſtand-en von	*ig ghlòu-wey aun Gut dane vàuter, oll-maght-e-ghen ſhœpf-er das him-mels und dare arden. ig glibe aun yèſus Chroſt ſy-nen ìne-e-ghen ſoan, ún-ſern herrn, dare em-pfáung-en iſt voan dame hylee-ghen ghiſtey, ghey-boaren voan dare yòung-frow-en mau-rèe-en, ghe-lit-ten ùn-ter Puntſee-en Pee-làw-ten, ghei-crytsee-ghet, ghei-ſtúr-wen und bei-grèu-wen, needer-ghei-fau-ren tſur hèl-len, aum drìt-ten tàughey wèeder-um ouf-er-ſton-den*

dem tode, auf-ge-fa-ren gen himm-el, siz-end zu'r reht-en hand Gott-es des allmæht-ig-en va-ters, von dann-en er komm-en wird zu riht-en di leb-end-ig-en und di tod-en. ih glaube an den Hl. Geist, eine Hl. Christl. Kirhe, ge-me in-shaft der hei-lig-en, ver-geb-ung der sünd-en, auf-er-ste-ung des fleish-es und nah dem tode ein e-wig-es leb-en.

voan dame toadey òuf-ghei-fau-ren ghan him-le sits-and tsoor ráght-en haund gút-tes das oll-mágh-tee-ghen váu-ters, voan dón-nen are cúm-man wird tsoo rig-ten dee lá-wen-dee-ghen und dee tó-a-den. ig glou-wey aun den hy-lee-ghen ghyst, iney hy-lee-ghey kréostlee-ghey keerghey ghey-mine-shauft dare hy-lee-ghen ver-ghá be-oung deir sín-den, óuf-ar-stey-oung des fly-shes und naug dame toadey ine ei-wee-ghes lá-wen.

II.

the Summe of the Law of God taken out of Matth. chapt. XXII. v. 37, 38, 39, 40.

Du solt den Herr-en dein-en Gott lib-en von ganz-em herz-en, von ganz-er sel-en und von ganz-em ge-müte. dis ist das erst-und grœste ge-bot; das an-dere a-ber ist di-sem gleih: du solst dei-

doo sult den hár-ren díne-en Gutt lee-wen voan gaunt-sem hàrt-sen, voan gaunt-ser seil-en und voan gaunt-sem ghey-méetey. dis ist daus àrst-und græstey ghey-bóat; daus on-derey àu-wer ist dee-sem glighe: doo sulst dy-

nen næhſt-en liben als dih ſelb-eſt. an di-ſen zwey-en geboten hang-et das ganze ge-ſez und di Pro-phet-en.

nen nàghs-ten lee-wen als dig ſel-weſt, aun dee-ſen tſwy-en ghei-hòa-ten hàung-et dàus gàunt-ſey ghei-ſàts und dee Pro-phèi-ten.

III.

The Lords Prayer.

Unſ-er vat-er, der bu biſt i'm himm-el, ge-hei-lig-et werde dein nam; zu uns komme dein reih; dein will ge-ſchæ-e wi i'm himmel alſo auh auf erd-en unſ-er tæg-lih brot gib uns heute und vergib' una uns-ere ſhuld-en, als wir ver-geb-en unſ-ern ſhuld-ig-ern; und füre uns niht inn ver-ſuh-ung, ſondern er-loeſe uns vo'm ubel; denn dein iſt das reih, di kraft und di herr-lig-keit von e-wig-keit zu e-wig-keit. Amen.

un-ſer vàu-ter, dùrò doo biſt im hìm-le, ghei-hy-lee-ghet wèir-dey dine naum; tſoo uns cùm-mey dine righe; dine will ghey-ſhà-ey wee im hìm-le, òll-ſo oug ouf àr-den; ùne ſer tàg-lee-ghes broat gib uns hitey und ver-ghib uns ùn-ſey-rey ſhòol-den, ols weer ver-gà-wen ùn-ſern ſhàol-dee-ghern; und fee-rey uns neoght in ver-ſoo-ghoong, zùn-dern er-lœ-ſey uns voam è-well; denn dine iſt daus righe, dee croft und dee herr-lig-kite voan èi-wig-kite tſoo èi-wig-kite àu-men.

Etymologia,

OR

The Second Part of Words considered by themselves without construction.

Chap. 1. *of the Nominal Derivation or Declension.*

Sect. 1. of the Gendre, Motion and Degrees of the Nouns.

N. I. the Gendre and particularly of the Substantive.

the Gendre of a Substantive is to be known by three wayes. I. by the auxiliary noun or Article especialy the definit der, di, das, *which according to its threefold both gendre and termination signifyes a masculine, when it is of the first termination; a feminine, when it is of the second; a neutre, when it is of the third termination, as we shall see hereafter. That is the surest way used commonly in dictionaries, but shewing us the gendre only a posteriori or after we know, what article must there be set before a substantive. II. by the signification of the word it self, whereof*

theſe three Rules are to be obſerved: 1. *all the propre names of gods, angels both good and bad, men of all dignities, offices and arts, virtues and vices belonging to them; likewiſe the names of the quarters of a year, months, dayes, winds, pretious ſtones, money &c. are of the maſculine gendre.* 2. *all the proper names of goddeſſes, women, dignities, offices, vertues and vices propre to that ſex; as alſo the names of the rivers, and the fruits of the tree &c. are feminines. except the river* Jordan, Euphrat *or* pfrat, Rhodan, Rein *or* Rhein, Mæin, Po, Nekker, *and the fruit* apfel, *apple, which are maſculines; but the word* weib, *woman or wife would be neutrall.* 3. *all the proper names of the countries, cities, towns and villages, of metalls and minerals, of the letters, of diminutivs and words of number, of the infinitive moods and adjectives uſed ſubſtantively, are of the neutre gendre. except the countries that have the termination* ſhaft *e. g.* graffſhaft, *earledome &c. which are feminines, and the word* ſtal, *ſteel a kind of metall propre to the maſculine Mars, is as well of the maſculine as neuter gendre. This is the moſt naturall, but too generall way.*

III. by its finall termination; which is the more ſpeciall way, to be uſed in a Grammar, eſpecialy for thoſe that have no true and complete dictionary; and therefore we ſhall here inſiſt upon it the larger viz. through the whole

alphabet setting betwixt the terminations and the words their naturall gendre indicated by the definit article, as ending in

B der: ſtab, *ſtaff*, leib, *body* &c. *except:* das: weib, *wife*, kalb, *calf*, grab, *grave*, laub, *leaf*, *and all that beſides this termination have alſo the ſyllable GE in their beginning*, e. g, gewœlb, *vault*, gewœb, *weaving*, gewerb, *trading* &c.

D der: abend, *evening*, grund, *ground*, mund, *mouth* &c. *except:* di: hand *hand*, gegend, *region*, huld, *favour*, jugend, *youth*, ſhuld, *debt*, tugend, *vertue*, wand, *wall*. das: bad, *bath*, band, *band*, bild, *figure*, eingeweid, *guts*, elend, *misery*, feld, *field*, geſind, *family*, glid, *limb*, gold, *gold*, kind, *child*, land, *countrie*, leid, *ſadneſs*, lid, *lied*, kleid, *garment*, pfand, *pawn*, pferd, *horſe*, pfund, *pound*, rad, *wheel*, rând, *runt or bullock*, wild, *venſon or wild beaſts*, end, *end*.

E di: naſe, *noſe*, ſeite, *ſide*, ſeide, *ſilk*, libe, *love*, &c. *except:* der: ſne, *ſnow*, kle, *threſoly*, *and all that have not the halfmute E. but note well, that there is never a letter more abuſed both in the meetre and here in the gendre, than the vowel E, which abuſe crept in by a bad cuſtom and by the variety of dialects. for ſome of them as the Thuringian, Miſnian, Sileſian &c. add it, when they ſhould not, e. g. in the maſculine and neutre ſubſtantives:* der fürſte,

der hake, der ſame; das geſihte, das herze &c. *when they ſhould ſay and write:* der fürſt, *prince*, hak, *hook*, ſam, *ſeed*; das geſiht, *ſight*, herz, *heart*; *whereas ſome others as the Frankonian, the Oſter- or Voghtlandiſh, and that of the Palatinate, omitte it both in writing and ſpeaking feminin ſubſtantivs, and maſculin or neuter adjectivs uſed ſubſtantively e. g.* der reih, das weis, ein ſtub, een kaz, zig, ein ſtund, runas &c. *when they ought to add it thus:* der reihe, *the rich*, das weiſe, *the white*; eine ſtube, *ſtove*, kaze, *cat*, zige, *ſhe-goat*, ſtunde, *houre*, rue, *reſt*, naſe, *noſe*. *ſee in the* 1. *part. the* 2. *ſect. of the* 1. *chap.*

F der: aff, *ape*, tropf, *drop*, topf, *pot*, wolf, *waif*, brif, *letter &c. except* das: ſhaf, *ſheap*, ſhaff, *a certain veſſel*, ſhiff, *ſhip*.

G der: ring, *ring*, ſig, *victory*, tag, *day*, jůngling, *youngman*, geſang *ſong &c except*: di: burg, *caſtle*, *and all Denominativs in* ung *e. g.* hoffnung, *hope*, verzweiflung, *deſpair*, ſendung, *ſending &c.* das: ding, *thing*, beding, *condition*, gelag, *company*, tallig, *tallow*, werg, *work or tow*, aug, *eye*, *likewiſe all Denominativs in* ENG *and* ING *beginning with the ſyllable* GE *e. g.* geding, *bargain*, getræng, *throng*, geſling, *ſticking piece*, gemeng, *mixture*, *&c.*

H der: bauh *belly*, fiſh *fiſh*, tiſh *table*, geruh *ſmell*, ſhuh *or* ſhu *ſhoe &c. except*: das: bleh, *tinn*, dah, *datch or tack*, fah,

partition, gelah, *laughter*, gelaih *or* læih, *the seed e. g. of frogs*, gemah, *room*, joh, *yoke*, loh, *hole*, peh, *pitch*, reih, *kingdome*, tuh, *cloth*, buh, *book*. *the feminins have (or ought to have) their final E by some omitted e. g.* di buhe, *beech*, di ſahe, *ſake &c. on the contrary they add often not only this vowel but the ſingle aſpiration alſo, the which never ought to ſtand in the end of a word or ſyllable, e. g.* ſtroh, floh, gelahe, ruh, kuh, vihe *&c. whereas they ſhould write:* ſtro, flo *or* flog, gelah, rue, kue, vi, *which ſee in their own place.* di: milh, *milk*, marh, *marchionate are without the E feminin. ſee T for T H.*

I der: Mai, *May*, brei, *porridge &c. except:* di: diberei *thievery*, bûberei *knaverie*, hurerei, *whoredome, and ſo forth all the nominal Derivativs, receiving ſometimes their finall E alſo:* hurereye, dibereye, bûbereye, freſsereye *&c.*

das: ei, *egg*, blei, *lead*, vi, *cattel*; *likewiſe all the verball derivativs in* EI *and beginning with the ſyllable* GE: geſhrei, *bawling*, geſpei, *ſpitting &c. not* geſhreye, geſhreih *or* geſhreihe; geſpeye, geſpeih *or* geſpeihe.

K der: dank *thank*, drekk *dirt*, hak, *hook*, ſakk *ſack*, mark *or* markt, *market &c. except:*

di: bank *bench*, mark *or* marh *marchionatus.*

das: volk, *folk*, werk, *work*, ſtûkk, *part*, ſhokk, *three ſcore*, mark *or* benemarg, *marrow*, glûkk *or* gelûkk, *luck*,

ſo all the Denominativs of this termination and beginning with the ſyllable GE, *e. g.* gelenk, *joint*, gelhenk, *guiſt*, getrænk, *drink*, gemerk, *token or ſign*, gewœlk, *clouds &c. never* gelenke, gelhenke *&c.*

L der: al, *eel*, eſel, *aſs*, flegel, *flail*, will, *will*, pful, *pool*, ſattel *ſaddle*, zal *or* ſwanz, *tail*, geiſel *hoſtage &c. except*: di: fakkel, *torch or link*, gabel, *fork*, geiſel, *whip*, kahel, *piece of a furnace*, kandel *or* kanne, *canne*, nadel, *needle*, kwal, *torment*, ſemmel, *white bread*, ſihel *ſickel*, ſhaufel, *ſcuffle*, ſheitel, *ſheddle*, ſhiſsel, *diſh or platter*, ſtaffel, *ſtep*, trübſal, *anguiſh*, drangſal, *diſtreſs*, wal, *choice*, bibel, *bible*, ſpindel, *ſpindle*, hummel, *drone*, neſsel, *nettle*, deihſel *pole of a coach or wagon*, pærl, *pearle*.

das: beil, *hatchet*, fell, *ſkinn*, grakel, *quarrel*, hæil, *hail or ſalvation*, mal, *meal or mark*, mel *meal*, metall, *mettal*, modèl, *model*, œl, *oil*, ſegel, *ſail*, ſigel, *ſeal*, ſeil, *rope*, ſpil, *play*, zil, *mark to ſhut at*, kamel, *camel*. *likewiſe all the Denominativs of this termination and the initial ſyllable* GE, *e. g.* gebell, *barking*, gemal, *conſort*, getümmel, *tumult*, *&c. or there be ſeverall feminins having their E, which is omitted by ſome e. g.* nahtigalle, *nightingall*, zale, *number*, galle, *gall &c. ſo we find both maſculins and neuters written with it, e. g.* geſelle, *fellow*, gehæule, *houling &c. whereof neither ſhould be done.*

M der kamm *or* kamb *comb*, arm *arm*,

boſom *boſom*, ram *or* ramen *frame*, traum *dream*, tum *or* dom *dome &c. except*, di : ſham *or* ſhame, *ſhame*, tramm *or* tramme, *dramm.*

das : lamm *or* lamb, *lamb*, *and all the compounds of the maſculine* : tum *or* dom, *e. g.* fürſtentum, *princedome*, pabſtum, *popedome &c. likewiſe the denominativs beginning with* GE, *as* gewürm, *vermin*, geſwærm, *noiſe &c.*

N der : beginn, *beginning*, dorn *thorne*, han, *cock*, karn, *cart*, ſwan, *ſwan*, wein, *wine*, kern, *kernel &c. except:* di : birn *pear*, pein *pain*, ſtirn, *forehead*; *and all the denominativs of that ending e. g.* kœhin *or* kœhinn *and ſometimes* kœhinne, *cookwoman*; lœbin *or* lœwinn, *or* lewinne *lioneſs &c.*

das : bekken, *baſon*, bein, *bone*, eiſen, *iron*, ferken, *pigg*, ſwein, *ſwine*, garn, *yarne*, hun, *chick*, horn, *horn*, korn *corne*, kůſsen, *cuſhion or bolſter*, gehirn, *brains*, geſtirn, *ſtars*, geſpann *couple or ſtraightening as* geſpann ohſen, *couple or yoke of oxen*, herz-geſpann, *heart-ach*, *likewiſe all diminutivs and infinitivs*, *e. g.* fingergen, hændgen, kindgen, *&c. little finger, hand, child*; eſsen *meat*, trinken *drink &c.*

O and œ der : flo *or* flog, *flea.*

das : ſtro *ſtraw*, rœ *roe*, wœ *wo.*

P der : karp *or* karpen, *carp*, klump *or* klumpen *lump*, rapp *or* rappen *blackiſh horſe*, lapp, *ignorant fellow or rude puppie*, *or* lappen, *ragg or batch &c. except;*

das : geripp *or* geribb *carcaſs without fleſh*, geſipp *ſociety particularly of a common crue*, geſupp *drinking or dippling &c. if there be any more of this termination and the initial ſyllable* GE. *but neither of them ſhould have the feminin E*, Karpe geſippe *&c.*

R der : hammer, *hammer*, keller *cellar*, leihter, *candleſtick*, pfeiler, *pillar*, trihter *funnell*, tor *fool*, *with all the verball ſubſtantives in* ER, *e. g.* ſlæfer, *ſleeper*, kæufer, *cheapman*, rihter *judge &c. except* : di : blatter *bladder*, butter *butter*, feder, *feather*, folter, *rack*, kammer, *chamber*, klammer, *holdfaſt*, klapper, *raddle*, leber, *liver*, marter, *torment*, ſhulder, *ſhoulder*, ſtewer *or* ſteur, *taxes* ; klafter, *fathom*, mutter, *mother*, tohter, *daughter*, ſweſter, *ſiſter*, *where the laſt ſyllable is allwayes ſharp and ſhort without the E feminin* ; *but when it is ſoft and long*, *we ſhould add the ſaid E both becauſe of the gendre and the pronunci-ation:* bare, *beere or hearſe*, gefare, *danger*, ſhare, *multitude*, gewære, *a word uſed by the ſellers and buiers*, kere *and* widerkere, *turning and returning*, lære *or* lœre *doctrin*, zire *or* zirde *ornament*, gebûre *or* gebirde, *duty*, tûre *or* dûre, *dore*, begire *or* begirde, *deſire*, kure *or* kœre, *election*, figure, *figure*, ſpure, *footſtep*, nature, *nature*, rote rure *the loſing of the guts*, ſnure, *thread*, *or daughter in law*, flure, *piece of ground*, hure, *whore &c. never* : gefar, lær, zir, begir, hur *&c. unleſs in compoſition ſtanding before an other word*, *as* gefær-lih, *dangerous*,

lær-reih, *full of doctrin*, zir-lih *handsome*, begirig, *desirous*, hůrish, *whorish*.

das: bir, *beer*, tir, *beast*, har, *hair*, jar, *year*, par, *pair*, or, *ear*, nadel-œr, *ey of a needle*, ror, *gunne*, fiber, *fever*, biber, *bever*, fuder, *load*, tor *or better* dor, *dore or gate*, chor, *quire*, wasser, *water*, futter, *fudder or lining*, fenster, *window*, kloster *cloister*, silber, *silver*, kupfer, *cupper*, leder, *leather*, wetter, *weather*, messer, *knife*, luder, *extravagancy*, zukker, *sugar*, ruder, *rudder or oar of a ship to rowe withall*, ufer, *bank of a river*, register, *register*, gitter *or* gegitter, *lettice*, geheur *or* ungeheur, *scarecrow*, pflaster, *plaster*, geswister, *sisters and brethren*; *so all the verbals beginning with* GE, *e.g.* gehœr, *hearing*, gewœr *or* gewer, *weapon*, geplærr, *roring*, gesnorr *snorting &c.*

S der: has, *hare*, fohs *or* fox, *fox*, ohs *or* ox, *ox*, spiss *or* spis, *spit &c. except*:

di: gans, *goose*, maus, *mouse*, laus, *louse*, nuss, *nut*, wildniss, *wilderness*.

das: haus, *house*, gras *or* grass, *grass*, glas *or* glass, *glass*, mas *or* mass, *measure*, mos *or* moss, *moss*, sloss, *castle or lock*; ross, *horse*, taus, *deuce*, eis, *ice*, fass, *fat or barrel*, loss, *lot*, reus *or* reusig, *fagot*, wammes *or* wams, *doublet*, as, *dead corps of a beast*, gelæis *or* glæis, *the cartlose*, wahs *or* wax, *wax*, *so all the verbals of that ending and the syllable* GE, *e. g.* gesmæis, *insects or vermins*, gefæs, *vessels*, gesæss, *buttock*, gefræss, *feasting &c. like-*

wiſe the compounded with the ſmall ſyllable niſs *or* nûſs, *eſpecialy having in their beginning the ſyllable* GE, *e. g.* gefængniſs *or* gefængnûſs, *priſon*, gedæhtniſs *or* gedæhtnûſs, *memory &c. but without this præformativ ſyllable* GE, *they are commonly of both the feminin and the neuter gendre e. g.* begegniſs, *fortune*, begængniſs, *celebration*, verdammnûſs, *damnation*, bildniſs, *form or figure &c.*

T der: hut, *hat*, rat, *counſel or counſellour*, bart *or* bard, *beard*, dorſt *or* durſt, *thirſt*, ernſt *or* ærnſt, *earneſt*, mut, *courage &c. except:*

di: armut, *poverty*, *with the other compounds*; antwort, *anſwer*, hut, *cuſtody*, [illegible], *city*, ſat, *ſeed*, tat *or* dat, *deed*, art, *kind*, aht *baniſhment*, angſt, *anguiſh*, axt, *hatchet*, fort, furt, *or* fart, *ford*, geſtalt, *manner*, haft, *faſtening or impriſonment*, haut, *ſkin*, kraft, *vertue*, laſt, *load*, maht, *power*, naht, *night*, praht, *pomp or majeſtie*, raſt, *reſt*, ſlaht, *ſlaughter*, ſorgfalt, *ſorrow*, traht, *faſhion*, braut, *bride*, arbeit, *work*, triſt, *paſture*, gruft, *grotta*, kluft, *that ſpace of two diſtant places*, ſhrift, *ſcripture or writing*, vernunft, *reaſon or underſtandig*, welt, *world*, zeit, *time*, zukunft *or* herkunft, *advent or the coming near*, zunft, *tribe or companie of tradesmen*, notdurft, *need or neceſsity*, bronſt, *heat*, konſt, *art*, wut, *madneſs*, luft, *air*, auffiht *or* obſiht, *inſight or care*, friſt, *time*, gedult, *patience*, fluht, *flight*, fruht, *fruit*,

forht *or* furht *fright or fear*, giht *gout*, liſt, *cunning or trick*, pfliht, *duty*, ſuht *a diſeaſe*, ſwindſuht, *conſumtion*, verziht, *renouncing and denial of the right and poſſeſſion of a thing*, zuht, *manners*, poſt, *poſt*, bruſt, *breaſt*, geburt, *birth*, worſt, *link or* (*black*) *pudding*, koſt, *coſt or meat*, luſt, *pleaſure* glut, *flame*. *likewiſe all Denominativs in* heit *and* keit, *e. g.* erbarkeit *or* redligkeit, *honeſty*, faulheit *or* trægheit, *idleneſs or lazineſs &c.*

das: wort, *word*, ſprihwort *proverb*, amt *office*, blat, *leaf*, haupt (*or* hæt) *head*, haft *or* hæft, *handle or haft*, liht, *light or candle*, geriht, *the ſeſsions or a diſh of meat*, gerûht, *fame or report*, geræt *houſhold ſtuff or tools*, reht *law or right*, ſheit, *a piece of wood*, gewiht, *weight*, gediht, *fiction or poem*; geſiht, *ſight or face*, gleit *or* geleit *and* beleit, *accompagnation*, bret, *board*, zelt *or* gezelt, *apartment or tabernacle*, geriſt *or* gerûſt, *ſcaffolt*, toht, *wick of the candle*, brot, *bread*, ſwert, *ſword*, lot, *ounce*, neſt, *neaſt*, hergewett *a word uſed by the Lawiers*, kraut, *herb*, maut, *ſhipmoney*, blut *or* blutt *blood*, gut *or* gutt *goods*, geblût *or* geblûtt, *bloud*, gemût *or* gemûtt, *mind*; U der: bau, *building*, tau *or* daw, *dew*, leu *or* lœb, *lion*, ſhu *or* ſhuh *ſhoe &c. but the feminins have allwayes their final E, e. g.* di frawe, *woman*, ſawe, *ſow*, ſtrewe, *a bed of ſtraw*, ræwe, *repentance &c.*

das: gebæu *building*, hæi *or* heu *hay*,

X der Sax *or* Sahs, *Saxon*. ſax *or* lahs, *ſalmon &c. but the feminins have or ought to have their character E, e. g.* di heidexe, *or* eidehſe, *viper*, hexe *or* hehſe, *witch, &c.*

das : wax *or* wahs, *wax*, crucifix *&c. ſee the lett. S.*

Z der : ſhaz, *treaſure*, ſwanz, *tail*, tanz *or* danz, *dance*, wiz, *wit*, bliz, *lightening, &c. but the feminins have all an E e. g.* di ſhanze, *ſcaunce*, pflanze, *plant*, ſpize, *point*, ſprůze, *water-enging &c. not* pflanz, ſhanz *&c.*

di : Pfalz, *Palatinate, ſeemes to be without the E.*

das : antliz, *face*, geſez, *law or ſtatute*, herz, *heart*, harz *or* harzig, *roſin*, holz, *wood*, malz, *malt*, ſalz, *ſalt*, ſmalz, *greeſe*, nez, *net*, raz *or* ilz, *pol-cat.*

note 1. *the compound words keep the gendre of their laſt part e. g.* der kalbs-kopf, *calfsbead*, di hunds-naſe, *dogs-noſe*, das ſhu-leder, *ſhoe-leather &c. except thoſe few, which we have noted already in their own place.*

2. *there be ſome words of two gendres according to the uſe of diverſe countries and dialects, as* der *and* di : zirat, *ornament*, verhaft *impriſonment*, luſt, *aire*, aufrur, *ſedition*, bah, *brook*, un luſt, *diſpleaſure*, funk funken *or* ſunke, *ſpark of fire.*

der *and* das : armut, *poverty*, altar, *altar*, eid, *oath*, gift, *poiſon*, gewerb-*trading*, lærmen *or* lærm, *tumult*, reih

tum, *riches*, zepter *or* scepter, *sceptre*, shild, *shield*, tal *or* dal *dale*, teil *or* deil *part or deal*, lon *wages*, kan *canow or boat*, band *band*, hutband, *hatband*, der gemal, *husband*, das gemal *or* di gemalin, *wife*, di *and* das: gelübde *or* gelübt *vow*, erkæntniss, *or* erkæntnüs *knowledge*, bewœgniss *or* bewegnüs *motion &c. see the lett. s.*

3. *the gendre distinguishes sometimes the signification of those words, that have the same spelling*, e. g. der hut *hat*, di hut *custodie*, der tor, *fool*, das tor *or* dor, *dore or gate*, der taube *deaf*, di taube *dove*, der helm *helmet*, das helm, *hilt or handle*, der stift *sparable*, das stift, *dioceſs*, der ort, *place*, das ort, *the fourth part of silver money*, der straus *estridge*, der *and* di straus, *nosegay*, di wœe, *torment or griping*, das wœ *woe*, der chor *the musicians*, das chor *the quire*, der teil *part*, das teil *as* hinterteil, *hinderpart*.

4. *we use the foreign words commonly in their own gendre e. g.* der: poet, triumph, doctor, comet, planet *&c.* di: Philosophie, phantasie, regul, barbarei *&c.* das: secret, protocoll, sacrament, parlement, instrument *&c. except*: der: method, syntax, catheder, kalender, tempel. di: complimente, marter, lilie. das: creuz, paradis *or* paradeis, chor *v. quire*.

5. *as the mastulin and neuter A, E, O, of the Greek, Latin, Spanish, Italian &c. words (when we will or must use them) is quite un*

away in the German, French, and Engliſh tounges, e. g. favor, patron *or* padron, ballon *i. football*, poet, pom-orance, *orange*, glob, diplom, duell *&c. ſo on the contrary Their feminin A is changed Here into a halfmute E, the which is (or ought to be) kept allwayes both in pronouncing and in writing as well after a vowell e.g.* comœdie, Dorothee *&c. where I and E preceding ſound by its ſelf, and the finall E ſounds as that in* kræe *or* kree, *crow*, ſee, *ſea*, floee, *fleas &c. as after a conſonant e. g.* ſecte, dame, matrone *or* madrone, trompete marine *&c. except after an L, where this halfmute and feminin E in our toung is put in the foregoing vowels place, but the French and the Engliſh keep it ſtill in the words end and pronounce it, as we doe e. g.* fabel, regel, nobel *&c. Fr.* fable, regle, noble; *Engl. fable, rule, noble.*

n. 2. the Motion particularly of the Subſtantives.

Many Subſtantives ſignifying both ſexes become moveable by adding to the primitiv and maſculin, the feminin termination in, inn *or* inne, *called thence denominative feminine e. g.* ſhulter *or* ſhumaher *ſhoemaker*, ſhulterin *or* ſhumaherinne *ſhoemakers wife*; narr, *fool* nærrinne, *woman-fool*; ſneider, *tailor*, ſneiderinn *tailors wife*, phantaſt, *man fanatick*, phantaſtin *woman fanatick*; lœb *or* leu, *lion*, lœbin *or* lewin, *lioneſs &c. but we muſt here as well as in Engliſh*

look more upon the uſe, then the analogie; for we ſay ohs *ox*, kue *cow*, *not* ohſin, *oxeſs*; bokk *he-goat*, zige *ſhe-goat*, *not* bœkkin, *goateſs*; han *cock*, henne *henne*, *not* hæninne, *cockeſs &c.*

To the epicænes, that ſerve for both kinder under one termination (the gendre whereof they followe) we adde ſometimes an other word to make'em differ one from an other, as to fowls and birds, when cocks ein han, *and when hennes* eine henne *or* ſi, *e. g.* diſer ſperling iſt ein han, diſer aber eine ſi *or* eine henne, *this ſparrow is a cock, but that a henne &c. and to thoſe of the fiſhes that are males, we add the word* rogener, *roan; to the others* milher *qſ. milker; but to mankind and beaſts as well more-footed as fourfooted we add, like the Engliſh, the words* mænngen, weibgen, *male and female.*

Gendre and Motion of the Adjectives.

R. 1. *every adjective has ordinarily three gendres and as many terminations, which are taken away after a verbe, when there is neither an expreſs ſubſtantive nor article, (ſee R. 4.) e. g.*

masc.	*fem.*	*neut.*	*abſol.*
ſtarker,	ſtarke,	ſtarkes,	ſtark.
ſtærkerer,	ſtærkere;	ſtærkeres,	ſtærker.
ſtærkeſter,	ſtærkeſte,	ſtærkeſtes,	*ſtærkeſte.
hœrender,	hœrende,	hœrendes,	hœrend.
gelib'ter,	gelibte,	gelibtes,	gelibet.
meiner,	meine,	meines,	mein.
diſer,	diſe,	diſes,	dis.

* *the ſuperlative loſeth only the lett.* S *according to the R. 2. following.*

R. 2. but if one of the demonſtrative particles or the definit article, as well after the verbe as before it, precede an adjective either with its ſubſtantive or without it; we put away only the letter R *of the maſculin, and the letter* S *of the neuter adjective whatſoever, that is verbal, nominal or polyſyllabick pronominal.* e. g. der (diſer, jener) reihe mann erbawete das (dis *or* diſes, jenes) koſtbare und ſchoene haus, *the (this, that) rich man builded the (this, that) ſumptuous and fair houſe*; welher hut iſt der beſte? *which hat is the beſt?* ewerer (*or* der ewere *or* ewer hut) iſt der beſsere, und meiner (der meine *or* mein hut) iſt groeſser *or* der groeſsere, *yours is the better one, and mine (or my hat) is the bigger*; das ewere pferd war das geſwinde, *yours was the ſwift horſe &c. this holds alſo, when adjectius ſtand in ſtead of ſubſtantivs by the help of the definit article* e. g. der gerehte (*ſc.* menſh) mus vil leiden, *the juſt (ſc. man) has much to ſuffer*; di keuſche (*ſc.* jungfrawe) blibe beſtændig, *the chaſt (ſc. mayd) was conſtant*; das ſawere iſt bisweilen geſunder denn das ſüſse, *the ſower thing is ſometimes more wholeſome than the ſweet &c.*

R. 3. whereas an adjective in the vocativo or exclamitive caſe, and elſe ſerved either by the indefinit article or an adjective poſſeſsive, keeps everywhere the termination er, e, es e. g. libſter ihaz *or* libſtes herz! *ſweet-heart!*

o du gerehter Gott! *o thou juſt God!* ein (mein, diſer, jener &c.) guter freind, *a (my, this, that &c.) good friend*; eine (eure, iglihe &c.) hœflihe geſellſhaft, *a (your, every &c.) civill company*; ein (ſein, unſer, ir) nüzlihes buh, *a (his, our, her) uſefull book*. R. 4. *but this (viz. indefinit) article and the pronominall adjectivs of more than one ſyllables loſe here their terminations, as many hereof are capable, as we have ſeen already diverſe examples; and if they doe not or can not loſe their ending, then the nominal or verball adjectiv loſes its R in the maſculin, and S in the neutre gendre*, e. g. jener trewe vater, *that faithfull father*; jenes (dis *or* diſes) gehorſame kind, *that (this) obedient child.*

to the motion of nouns belongs their Diminution.

the nouns as well adjectivs as ſubſtantivs are made diminutivs in adding There (to the adjectivs) the ſyllable LIH *anſwering the ſyllable ISH in Engliſh e.g.* ſwarz ſwærzlih, *black blackiſh*, weis weislih, *white whitiſh &c. and Here (to the ſubſtantivs) the ſyllable* GEN *e. g.* ſhaf ſhæfgen, *little ſheap*, glaſs glæſsgen *little glaſs*, mann mænngen *little man &c. and this is done alſo in the propre names of men and women ſometimes not without their corruption, as in the Engliſh and other tounges e. g.* Hans Hænsgen, *John Jack*, Willhelm Wilmgen, *William Will*, Fridrih Frizgen, *Frederick*, Eliſabeth Lisgen *or* Elsgen, *Elizabeth Elſe or Betty*; Katharine Kætgen *or*

Thringen, *Katharine Kete &c.* *but we must here in this rule as well as anywhere else observe the use; for we say* eine kleine zeit *or* glükkſeligkeit, *a small time or fortune &c. not* zeitgen *or* zeitlein, glükkſeligkeitgen *or* glükkſeligkeitlein.

here as well of all diminutiv nouns, as of the moveable ſubſtantivs we have alwayes to obſerve, what we ſhall ſay in the 6. R. following.

n.3 the Degrees of Compariſon.

R. 1. *the degrees of compariſon are formed as in Engliſh either in adding ſome certain ſyllables to the poſitiv viz. to the abſolute (or as it ſtands after a verbe without any ſubſtantiv or article) in the abſolute comparativ* ER, *and in the abſolute ſuperlativ ESTE (to which is added an N, if precede the particle* am) *where both terminations are of all three gendres e.g.*

der leib, di naſe, das bein } iſt { lang, länger, der / dikk, dikker, di / dinn, dinner, das } { längſte / dikkeſte / dinneſte

a'm { längeſten, dikkeſten, dinneſten } *the bodie, noſe, legg is long, thick, thin; longer, thicker, thinner; the long-eſt, the thickeſt, the thinneſt.*

but to the comparative ſerved by the definit article, we add yet an E in all gendres e. g.

der { lange, längere } { leib / naſe / bein } *i. e.*
di { dikke, dikkere }
das { dinne, dinnere }

the { *long, longer* / *thick, thicker* / *thin, thinner* } *body. noſe. legg.*

and to the comparativ accompanied with a substantive and served by the indefinit article, is added in the masc. gender ER, *in the femin.* ERE, *in the neut.* ERES, *e. g.* ewer vater iſt ein gelærter-und weiſerer mann, als meiner *or* der meine, *your father is a better scholar and a wiser man than mine*; ire swester iſt eine ſchœnere (*or* ſchœner-) und reihere jungfrawe dann eure *or* di ewere *her sister is a handsomer and richer maid than yours*; mein hængſt iſt ein hœher-(*or* hœh-eres und geſwinderes pferd als ewere mære, *my stonehorse is a higher and swifter horse than your mare &c.* *the superlativ in the exclamativ and vocativ cases, or else accompanied with an adjectiv possessiv or the indefinit article, receives* R *in the masculin, and* S *in the neuter gendre, e. g.* o du grauſamſter widerig! *o thou most cruell tyrant!* du allerungehorſamſtes kind! *you most disobedient child!* unſer tewer-und werteſter Heiland war ein ſo wol unſchuldigſt-als gedultigſtes lamm, *our most dear and blessed Saviour was a lamb as most innocent as patient &c. see the foregoing* 3. *R. n.* 2.

R. 2. *or the degrees are made in setting before the positiv (especialy of the participles) the words* mer *or* weniger *e. g.* mer geſlagen *more beaten*; weniger befliſſen, *less industrious &c. and to make it signify a superlativ we add the words* ganz, hoh, vil, ſer *or the like e. g.* ewer ganz demütiger diner. *your most humble servant or* veſter humillimus ſervus; ein ſer gelærter mann, *a very learned man*

or vir doctiſsimus *&c. but theſe ſuperlatives doe ſignify rather excellency than compariſon.*

R. 3. *we uſe to ſet before each of the three degrees certain particles of intenſion to lighten their ſignification, as to the poſitive* ſer, gar, falt, vil, wol, hoh, überaus; *before the comparative* weit, noh, vil, mer, noh mer, etwas, etwas mer; *before the ſuperlative* aller, zu'm, hoh, a'm, hœhſt. *Hither belong the two particles* ur *and* erz, *e. g.* ur-alt, *very old or antiquiſsimus*, erzbub, *archknave or ſceleratiſsimus &c. the very ſame is to be obſerved alſo of ſome ſubſtantivs added to certain adjectivs ſignifying quality or quantity e. g.* eine haupt perl, *a very pretious pearle*; haupt-ſtatt, *a principal city*; welt-land-*or* ſtatt-kündig, *known in all the world. countrie or citie, Lat. notiſsimus, a, um*; blut-arm, *very poor, Lat. pauperior Iro or pauperrimus*; ſteinreih, *very rich, Lat. ditior Cræſo or ditiſsimus*, bein-*or* ſtein-hart *very hard*, honig-ſüſse, *very ſweet as honny*; eſsig-ſaur, *very ſower as vinegar*; ſne-weis, *very white as ſnow*, kol-*or*-peh-ſwarz *very black*; blei-ſwer *very havy as lead*; himmel-hoh *very high as the ſky*; ſonnen-helle *or*-klar *very light or clear as the ſunne &c.*

R. 4. *three adjectivs only and no more are irregulars, to wit* gut *good*, beſser (*of old* bas) *better*, beſt *beſt*; vil *much or many*, mer *or* merer *more*, meiſt *or* mereſt *moſt*; wenig *little*, weniger *leſs*, wenigſt *or* minſt *leaſt*.

there are ſome adjectives or nouns of like uſe

with adjectivs, which neither are nor can be compared e.g. link *left*, rehtish *right-handed*, tod *dead*, lebendig *living*, gœlden *or* gülden *golden*, hœlzern *wooden &c. likewise all numbers and pronouns, e. g.* ein *one*, erst *first*, zwei *two &c.* mein *my*, solh *such*, beide *both &c.*

R. 5. as the absolute adjectivs of whatsoever degree take the nature of the adverbs, where the comparativ ends in ER *and the superlativ either in* STE, *if goe before it* auf das *or* auf's; *or in* STEN, *when precede* zu'm (*for* zu dem) *or* a'm, *e. g.* er lebet hoh und præhtig *he lives high and sumtuously*; er lebet hœher (*or* hœher) und præhtiger als ein fürst *he lives higher and more sumtuously than a prince*; auf's *or* auf das præhtigste und hœhste *or* hœeste, zu'm *or* a'm præhtigsten und hœhsten *very high and sumtuously*: *so many particles become comparable and adjectivs in adding the termination of the comparativ and superlativ e. g.* unter *under*, der di *or* das untere *the lower*; der, di *or* das unterste *or* ünterste, *the lowest of all*; hinter *behind*, der-di-das hintere *that is behind*, weiter hinter *farther behind*, der-di-das aller-hinterste *the most farthest behind*, a'm *or* zu'm hintersten *most far behind*; bald *soon*, bælder *sooner*, der-di-das bældeste *the soonest*, aufs bældeste *very soon &c.*

R. 6. the characteristick letter A either single or in a bivowel, as also O and U *of the monosyllabick positivs in comparison is changed into* æ, œ, ü, *e. g.* alt *old*, ælter *older*,

älteſte *oldeſt*; faul *lazie*, fäuler *and* der-di-das fäuleſte; hoh *high*, höcher *or* höer, der-di-das höchſte *or* höeſte; rot *redd*, röeter, der-di-das röeteſte; dumm *dull*, dümmer, der-di-das dümmeſte *&c. but the polyſyllabicks or thoſe, that have more then one ſyllable, are immoveable in their eharakterſtick vowels e. g.* tapfer *ſtout*, tapferer, tapferſte; frohtig *frosty*, frohtiger, frohtigſte; luſtig *merry*, luſtiger, luſtigſte; aufgeblaſen *lofty or proud*, aufgeblaſener, aufgeblaſenſte; verſuht *tried by experience*, verſuhter, verſuhteſte; willkommen *welcome*, willkommener, willkommenſte; verfluht *curſed*, verfluhter, verfluhteſte *&c.*

Sect. 2. of the Regular Declenſion.

we have four caſes in both numbers, the firſt whereof is anſwering to the nominativ and vocativ or exclamativ of the Latins, the ſecond to their genitiv or poſſeſſiv, the third to their dativ and ablativ, the fourth to their accuſativ.

Formation of the Singular Number.

the rootword or radix of a noun is the firſt caſe and the fountain, from whence the reſt is derived.

the ſecond caſe is made by adding to the firſt of the maſculin und neuter ſubſtantivs either the letter S, *eſpecially if they end in* EL, EN, ER, *e. g.* der himmel *heaven or ſky*, des himmels; das getümmel *tumult*, des getümmels; der regen *rain*, des regens;

der ſegen *bleſsing*, des ſegens; das haůlen und weinen *howling and weeping*, des hæulens und weinens; der pfeffer *pepper*, des pfeffers; das waſſer *water*, des waſſers &c. *never* himmeles regenes waſſeres &c. *or by adding the ſyllable* ES, *when they are ended in any other conſonant or vowell, eſpecialy in* SH, S, *X*, Z, *e. g.* der fiſh *fiſh*, des fiſhes; der lax *or* lahs *ſalmon*, des laxes *or* lahſes; das malz *malt*, des malzes &c. *never* des fiſh's lax's *or* lahſ's malz's; *whereas in the other terminations either in meetre or in quick pronunciation the letter* E *may be omitted e.g.* der leib *body*, des leibes *or* leib's; der ſtrom *ſtream*, des ſtromes *or* ſtrom's; das rad *wheel*, des rades *or* rad's &c. *but allmoſt all thoſe maſculin ſubſtantivs, that have their tonick accent in the laſt ſyllable and ſignify a ſenſitiv creature, inſtead of ES receive in their ſecond caſe EN, to which afterwards in conſtruction with an other ſubſtantiv immediatly following, moſt commonly is added the letter S, and the article of the firſt caſe is allways taken away, unleſs both ſubſtantivs be combined by hyphen, where the word of the firſt caſe does keep its article, but on the contrary that, which was of the ſecond caſe, loſes as well the letter S, as the article, e.g.* der fůrſt, herr, ſoldat, menſh, Tůrk, has &c. das geld des fůrſten, des fůrſtens geld, das fůrſten-geld *the money of the prince or the princes money*; di ſele des menſhen, des menſhen *or* des menſhens ſele, di menſhen-ſele, *the ſoul of the man*

or man's ſoul; eine pfode eines haſen, eines haſens (*or* haſen) pfode, eine haſen-pfode, *a foot of a hare or a hares foot &c. to theſe words add alſo the neuter :* hærz *heart. the maſculins* mann, fiſh *and perhaps ſome others more receive only the ſyllable ES*; *but* vater, vetter, bruder, ſwager *doe receive either S or N, e. g.* des vetters *or* des vettern, *of the uncle*, des ſwagers *or* des ſwagern, *of the brother in law.*

ſome words having two terminations in the firſt caſe, have as many in the ſecond, e. g. der nam *or* namen *name*; ſam *or* ſamen *ſeed*; kuh *or* kuhen *cake*; frid *or* friden *peace*; hak *or* haken *hook*; gart *or* garten *garde*; poſs or poſsen *wag or merry trick*; funk *or* funken *ſpark*; balk *or* balken *balke*; ſnak *or* ſnaken *merriander*; lenz *or* lenzen *ſpring*; ſhatt *or* ſhatten *ſhaddow*; mai *or* mæyen *may*; rapp *or* rappen *black horſe*; lapp *or* lappen *bosch*; taum *or* taumen *thumb*; ball *or* ballen *ball*; kolb *or* kolben *club*; ſnapp *or* ſnappen *ſtopping*, felſs felſsen *rock*, karp *or* karpen *carpe*. des: names, nam's, namens; ſames, ſam's, ſamens; frides, frid's, friderns *&c.*

the feminin termination E, likewiſe all abſolute both nominall and verball adjectives of what gendre ſoever and having before themſelves either of the articles, receive N or EN in ſtead of S *or ES, e. g.* eine heilige gemeine *a holy communion*, der heiligen gemeinen; di ſanfte wolle *the ſoft wool*, der ſanften wollen *&c. exc.* 1. *the feminin*

ſubſtantivs in E, that ſignify quality, quantity, abundance, weight *&c. keep their termination in the whole ſingular, unleſs joined to an other ſubſtantiv by hyphen, where they get the letter S, contrary to the maſculins, e.g.* di libe *charity*, der libe; di grœſse *greatneſs*, der grœſse; di ſwæhe *weakneſs*, der ſwæhe; di ſwere *heavineſs*, der ſwere *&c. but* di libes-geſhihte *romance of love*; ein libes-kind, *a child of love or begot in love &c. theſe and the like adjectivs uſed ſubſtantively in the feminin gendre, change their characteriſtick vowels A, O, U, as other moveable ſubſtantives, whereof in the foregoing Sect. n. 2. at the end. exc. 2. the feminin adjectiv without either of the articles prefixed, ends in* ER, *and the neuter in* ES, *in ſtead of* EN, *which ſyllable ſometimes remaines in the maſculin and neuter gendre, e.g.* guten teils *and* gutes teils *the moſt part*, heilſamen *and* heilſames rats *of wholeſome counſel*, reiſen *and* reiſes verſtandes *of a ripe underſtanding &c.* einer guten geſundheit *or* guter geſundheit, *of a good health*; gutes *and* guten vermœgens *or* eines guten vermœgens, *of a good eſtate*; ſtattlihen anſeens *and* ſtattliges anſeens *or* eines ſtattligen anſeens, *of a grave authoritie &c. the other feminin ſubſtantivs of what ending ſoever being without the finall E, doe keep their termination; but taking it (as ſome do) they follow the generall Rule, e. g.* di hand *hand*, der hand; di ſtatt *city*, der ſtatt; di gerehtigkeit *juſtice*, der gerehtigkeit;

di herrſhaft *dominion*, der herrſhaft; di dinerin *or* dinerinne *maidſervant*, der dinerin or dinerinnen; di verræterei *or* verræterеye *treaſon*, der verræterei *or* verræterеyen; di erlœſung *redemtion*, der erlœſung &c. *finaly note, that the poſſeſsiv and relativ adjectiv of the third perſon in all three gendres and in both numbres ſtands ſometimes (as in Engliſh) betwixt two words having relation one to the other, eſpecially when either of them ſignifyes poſſeſsion e. g.* des fürſten ſein geld *or* des fürſtens gelt *the prince's his money*; der mutter tohter *or* der mutter ire tohter, *the mother her daughter*; des pferdes zaum *or* des pferdes ſein zaum, *the horſes bridle &c. the formation of the articles and of the pronouns ſee in the following third ſection.*

the third caſe is formed by putting away the letter S *of the ſecond, whereſoever it is found; the other both adjectiv and ſubſtantiv nouns remain here, as they were in the foregoing ſecond caſe, without any other exception than, that the adjectivs having neither of the articles nor any of the demonſtrativ pronouns before themſelves, receive in the maſculin and neuter gender an M, and in the feminin an R, in ſtead of their finall N, e. g.* er iſt gutem weine und gutem bire *or* dem guten weine und guten bire gewogen, *he loves good wine and good beer*; er kœm't von guter (*or* von einer guten) geſellſhaft, *he comes from a good company*; ſi iſt aus berümterem (*or* einem berümteren) geſlehte entſproſsen

als ir, *she cometh from a more renowned kindred than you &c.* *this case, when it signifyes the first of the Latins, is allwayes accompanied with a preposition.*

the fourth case is like the first in all regular nouns except the masculin adjectivs, and those masculin substantivs, that have in their second an N or EN, doe allwayes keep it, e. g. den menshen *hominem*; den löwen *leonem*; den pfawen *pavonem.*

Formation of the Plurall.

of the second case of the singular number is immediatly formed the first of the plural 1. *by taking away the letter S of the masculin substantivs, and the last consonant either N, R, or S of the indefinit adjectivs in what gendre soever; but the halfmute E immediatly foregoing is allwayes kept, where it is or ought to be regularly, e. g.* reihe dîbe *rich thieves,* lange nægel *long nails*, fromme fürſten *pious princes*, ſwere hæmmer *heavie hammers &c.* *note, those substantivs, that have a double termination and sometimes a double gendre in the singular, have commonly also a double plurall, as* der ſhu *or* ſhuh *shoe,* di ſhue *or* ſhûhe; der tal *or* dal *dale,* di tale *or* dale, *but* das dal *or* tal, di tæler *or* dæler; der *and sometimes* das leib *body,* di leiber *and (but seldom)* leibe; der menſh *man in both sexes for mankind,* di menſhen, *men or homines*; *but* das menſh, di menſher; Gott *God*, di Gœtter; der Geiſt *ghost,* di Geiſter; der wald *wood or forrest*, di

wælter *and* wælte; der drekk *dirt or mock*, di drekker *or* drekke; der ort *place*, di œrter *and* orte; *but* das ort *the fourth part of silver money*, di orte; das wort *word*, di worte *and* wœrter; der *or* di ſtraus *noſegay*, di ſtræuſe *and* ſtræuſer; *but* der ſtraus *or* ſtraus-vogel *eſtridge*, di ſtrauſen; das land *land or countrie*, di lænder *and* lande; der blokk *or* kloz *block*, di blœkke *and* blœkker *or* kloeze *and* kloezer; der pflokk *plock or wooden nail*, di pflœkke *or* pflœkker; der ſtokk *block or ſtick*, di ſtœkke *and* ſtœkker; das ding *thing*, di dinge *and* dinger; der mann *man or vir*, di mænner *and ſometimes* manne *or* mann *e. g.* wi vil hat ſi eemænner gehabt? *how many husbands had ſhe?* es ſind drei mænner vor der tûre *or* dûre, *there be three men before the dore.* er hat di veſtung mit dreiſig mannen *or* mann eingenommen, *he has taken the fortreſs with thirty men.* tauſend mann (*or* manne) zu roſſe *or* zu pferde, *thouſand horſemen*; hundert mann (*or* manne) zu fuſſe *hundred ſootmen*, *not* mænner, pferden, roſſen, fûſſen. 2. *by adding to the feminin ſubſtantivs of whatſoever termination either the letter* N, *or the ſyllable* EN, *if it be not there allready, where, as alſo in the definit adjectivs, it is alwayes kept e. g.* di ritterlihen taten *or* daten, *the heroick actions or deeds*; di hellen kwellen, *the clear welles*; di ſûſen freuden und ſiheren ruen, *the ſweet joyes and ſecure reſts*; di leihten federn, *the light feathers*; di adlihen tugenden *the noble virtues*, di kleineren ſweſtern *the*

leſs ſiſters &c. except di ſawe *ſow*, di ſawen *and* ſæwe; di kue *cow*, di kůe; di magt *maidſervant*, di mægte; di luſt *pleaſure*, di lůſte; di hand *hand*, di hænde; di wand *wall*, di wænde; di zunft *tribe or companie of tradesmen*, di zunften *and* zůnfte. *with all thoſe that have the dipthong* AU *e.g.* di braut *bride*, di brǽute; di maus *mouſe*, di mæuſe; di laus *louſe*, di læuſe. *but* di mutter *and* di töhter *mother and daughter keep here their ſingular termination*, di můtter, di tœhter. 3. *either by taking quite away the letter S of the ſecond ſingular caſe in the neuter ſubſtantivs of what ſort ſoever e.g.* des ſhafes *of the ſheap*, di ſhafe; des bedinges *of the condition*, di bedinge; des werkes *of the work*, di werke; des reihs, *of the kingdome*, di reihe; des ſpiles *of the play*, di ſpile; des jars *of the year*, di jare; des roſſes *of the horſe*, di roſſe; des brotes *of the bread*, di brote, *and ſo forth all that are not amongſt the following. or by changing the final S of the ſecond ſingular into R, in theſe words here follow -ing*, das: weib *wife*, des weibes *of the wife*, di weiber *the wives &c. ſo* kalb *calf*, grab *grave*, bad *bath*, rad *wheel*, glid *limb*, lid *lied or ſong*, augenlid *eyelied*, bild *figure*, feld *field*, band *band*, land *land or countrey*, kind *child*, růnd *runt or bullock*, ſhild *ſhield*; dah *tatch*, fah *partition*, gelah *laughter*, gemah *room*, loh *hole*, bloh *block*, tuh *cloth*, buh *book*, volk *folk*, dal *or* tal *dale*, maul *mouth*; tum *or* dum *dome with its compounds e g.* reihtum *richeſs*, herzogtum *dukedome &c.* hun *pullet*, horn *horn*, geſtirn *conſtellation or ſtars*,

korn *corne*, gehirn *brains*, faſs *barrell*, ſlos *lock or caſtle*, reus *branch or bais*, glas *glaſs*, taus *deus*, wams *doublet*, haus *houſe*, as *carcaſs*; amt *office*, bret *board*, gut *good*, gemût *mind*, haupt *head*, kraut *herb*, liht *candle or light*, neſt *neaſt*, ſwert *ſword*, ſheit *piece of cleaven wood*, holz *wood*. *but ſome of them have both* E *and* ER, *as* das geſiht *face*, di geſihte *and* geſihter; geſleht *kind or ſort*, geſlehte *and* geſlehter; ſah *partition*, fæhe *and* fæher; pfand *pawn*, pfande *and* pfænder; band *bond*, bande *and* bænder; land *countrey*, lande *and* lænder; gewiht *weight*, gewihte *and* gewihter *&c.*

there are alſo ſome (but very few) which in their plurall receiv the ſyllable EN, viz. des ores *of the ear*, di oren; des herzes *or* herzen *of the heart*, di herzen. *but (according to our foregoing 3th. R.) all diminutivs and that end in* EL, EN, ER, *likewiſe all numericall and abſolute adjectivs being of all gendres, as alſo the infinitivs uſed for nouns, remain here, as they were in the firſt caſe of the ſingular e.g.* das ſhæfgen iſt geſhoren, *the little ſheap is ſhoren*, di ſhæfgen ſind geſhoren *the little ſheep are ſhoren*, zwei bekken ſind verkauft *two baſons are ſold*, di flægel ſind zerbrohen *the flails are broke*, di waſſer ſteen hoh *the waters ſtand high*, vir mandel *three ſcore &c. yet ſome of thoſe immoveable both maſculin and neuter ſubſtantivs eſpecially in* EL *or* ER *doe receive now and then in grave writings an E, becauſe of the emphaſis e.g.* das gewæſſer *flood of water*, di gewæſſere, der Keuſer *Emperour*, di Keuſere *&c.*

Of the Infinitivs used Substantively and therefore stiled (by the most ingenious Author of the Philosoph. Lang. p. 445.) participle substantives, note, that they have a double sence and signification e. g. das eſsen, das graben &c. *signify* 1. *either the object of the act or fact (there of eating) as the former word* das eſsen *meat, or the effect of our action (here of digging or graving) as the later does* der graben &c. *and these (as many there be in use, which their signification will tell us) have a plurall number* di eſsen *the dishes of meat,* di græben *or* græbene *graves or ditches; but when they signify* 2. *the very act or fact (as here of eating and grazing) it self, then they are never used in the plurall, and instead hereof is taken the verball noun in* ung, *if there be any need of e. g.* das bedanken *or* dankſagen *thank or thanksgiving,* di bedankungen *or* dankſagungen *never* di bedanken *or* dankſagen.

as in all the Doctrin of Derivation, so especially here in the formation of the plurall and its cases we must alwayes observe, where to change the characteristick vowels U, O, *and* A *both single and in the diphthong* AU, *into their improper bivowels* û, œ, æ *or* æu; *this is done here in all the plurall cases of all substantives here not excepted e. g.* der fuſs *foot,* di fûſse *feet,* der ſon *ſon,* di ſœne *ſones;* der ſhos *lap,* di ſhœſe *laps;* der vater *father,* di væter *fathers;* di hand *hand,* di hænde *hands;* das haus *house,* di hæuſer *houſes;* di maus *mouſe,* di mæuſe *mice &c. except all thoſe, that in their plurall end* 1. *in* EN *or* N *of what gendre ſoever e. g.* di

nammen *names*, di ſonnen *ſunnes*, di oren *eares*, &c. 2. *in* ENDE *or* UE *of the maſculins e. g.* di abende *evenings*, di ſhue *ſhoes* &c. 3. *in* NDE, FE, LE, RE, SE, TE, LZE *of the neuters*, *e. g.* di bande *bands*, di ſhaffe *tubs*, di male *meals*, di jare *years*, di maſe *meaſures*, di tahte *or* tohte *wicks of candles*, di ſalze *ſalts*, di malze *malts* &c. *likewiſe* di tage *dayes*, di arme *arms*, di baſtarde *baſtards*, di grade *degrees*, di ale *eels*, di tale *or* dale *dales maſculins*, *and* di johe *yokes*, *with ſome other neuters ending in E*, *the which doe not change their characteriſtick vowell-*

the ſecond and fourth caſes have the very ſame termination, *that has the firſt of that number in all manners of nouns*, *degrees and gendres*, *diſtinguiſhed one from an other either by the preposed articles or the indeclinable particles*, *except the indefinit adjectives receive here an R through all gendres e. g.*

erliher { mænner / frawen / kinder } *of honeſt* { *men.* / *women.* / *children.* }

unleſs they be preceded by an exceptive or reſtrictive particle as etlih, manh, vil, ein-ig *and ſuch like*; *for then they ſeem to follow alſo the foregoing common rule e. g.* etliher heiligen *and* heiliger mænner gedank-en *the thoughts of ſome holy men*, viler frommer *and* frommen frawen gebete *the prayers of many pious women*, der gehorſam manher gottfœrhtigen *and* gotsfœrhtiger

kinder *the obedience of many godly children &c. note here by the by, every ſubſtantiv both of the ſingular and plurall ſecond caſe may very handſomly be combined with the other of the firſt by the token hyphen, the which (though it be ſeldom uſed here in this compoſition) commonly either gives or takes away the lett. N or S in the ſingular, where of ſee the ſecond caſe of the precedent number e. g.* der buh-hændler *book-ſeller, for* der hændler der bůher *or* des buhs *the ſeller of the books or book*; ein ſhaf-hirt *a ſhep-heard, for* ein hirt der ſhafe *a heard of the ſheep*; ein kirh-turm *a church ſteeple, for* ein turm der kirhen *a ſteeple of the church*; ein gold ſmitt *or* ſilber-ſmitt *a gold-ſmith or ſilver-ſmith, for* ein ſmitt des goldes *or* ſilbers *a ſmith of gold or ſilver &c. but ſometimes we doe keep either of the aforeſaid letters e. g.* ein kriges-her *an army*, di wolfes-milh *wolfs-milk &c. and ſometimes we keep the plural termination e. g.* ein bůher-freind *a freind of books*, ein kindermœrder *a murtherer of a child or children &c. more examples ſee in the 3. Sect. of the III. chap. of this II. Part.*

the third caſe is formed by adding to the end of the firſt (having not allready this termination) the letter N; but all nouns, that have it, admit no difference of caſes here, being declined or rather diſtinguiſhed one from an other by the prepoſitiv particles juſt as in Engliſh.

e. g. { den / or / von } erlihen { mænnern / frawen / kindern } { to or / of the / boneſt } { men. / women / childrē }

finaly here is to be noted, that there be ſeverall Subſtantivs (known by the uſe and ſignification) which have no plurall numbre, not ſo much for want of a regular formation, as becauſe they are of no other but ſingular, propre and peculiar ſignification, the which becoming plurall, that is generall and common, gives alſo to the words the plurall termination, e.g. das ſalz *ſalt*, di ſalze *ſalts*; der eſſig *vinegar*, dī eſſige; das feyer *fire*, di feyere *fires*, di keuſhheit *chaſtity*, di keuſhheiten *chaſtities*; der Hans *John*, di hanſen *Johns &c. on the contrary there be plurals without the ſingular e. g.* di æltern *or* eltern *parents*, di alpen *the alpes*, di leute *the people*, di Staten *the States*, di hundes-tage *the dogs-dayes*, di franzoſen *the French pocks*, di blattern *the ſmall pocks*, di troebern *the huſks*, di maſern *the maſels*, *&c. and yet we ſay alſo* ein ſtat *a ſtate, but in an other ſignification*; eine blatter *a bladder or bliſter*, ein hundes-tag *one of the dogs-dayes.*

the foraign words follow the Declenſion of the natives, either with their own final termination or without it e.g. des Plutarches *or* Plutarchen ſpruh *Plutarchs ſentence*, Cicero's *or* Xenophons bůher *Ciceroes or Xenophons books*, Petrarchas *or* Petrarchens verſe *Petrarchs Poems*, i'm H. Evangelium des Evangeliſten Marcus *or* Lucas *in the holy Gospel of Mark or Luke*, di Sirenen *the marie-maids*, di Amazonen *the Amazons.*

Exampels of Declenſion in Regular Nouns.

I. the Indefinit Article before

Singular Maſculins.

Caſe

I. ein treuer vater, kneht, menſh.
II. eines trewen vaters, knehtes, menſhen
III. einem trewen vater, knehte, menſhen
IV. einen trewen vater, kneht, menſhen.

a faithfull father, ſervant, man.

Singular Feminins.

I, IV } eine rehte mutter, ſihel, hand.
II, III } einer rehten mutter, ſihel, hand.

aright mother, ſickle, hand.

Singular Neutres:

I, IV } ein kleines kind, herz, horn.
II. eines kleinen kindes, herzen, horns
III. einem kleinen kinde, herzen, horne

a little child, heart, horn.

Plurals of All three gendres togeiher:

I, IV { trewe vætter, knehte, menſhen.
rehte mûtter, ſihein, hænde.
kleine kinder, herzen, hœrner.

II { trewer vætter, knehte, menſhen.
rehte mûtter, ſiheln, hænde.
kleiner kinder, herzen, hœrner.

III { trewen vætern, knehten, menſhen
rehten mûttern, ſiheln, hænden.
kleinen kindern, herzen, hœrnern.

II. the Definit Article before 1. *masculins*, 2. *feminins and* 3. *neuters.*

I { 1 der trewe vater, kneht, menſh.
2 di rehte mutter, ſihel, hand.
3 das kleine kind, herz, horn.

II { 1 3 des { trewen vaters, knehtes, menſhen
kleinen kindes, herzen, horns.
2 der rehten mutter, ſihel, hand.

III { 1 3 dem { trewen vater, knehte, menſhen.
kleinen kinde, herzen, horne.
2 der rehten mutter, ſihel, hand.

IV { 1 den trewen vater, kneht, menſhen.
2 di rehte mutter, ſihel, hand.
3 das kleine kind, herz, horn.

All three Gendres together.

I IV di { trewen væter, knehte, menſhen.
di rehten mûtter, ſiheln, hænde.
kleinen kinder, herzen, hœrner.

II. der { trewen væter, knehte, menſhen.
rehten mûtter, ſiheln, hænde.
kleinen kinder, herzen, hœrner.

III. den { trewen vætern, knehten, menſhen.
rehten mûttern, ſiheln, hænden.
kleinen kindern, herzen, hœrnern.

III. Proper names of

	men:	*women:*	*cities: countries:*
I.	Georg,	Katharine,	Hall, Sahſen.
II.	Georgs, n;	Katharinen,	Halles, Sahſens.
III.	Georgen,	Katharinen,	Halle, Sahſen.
IV.	Georgen,	Katharinen,	Hall, Sahſen.

all the proper names may be declined alſo with the definit article e. g. der Samuel, di Marie, das Jan, *but then the feminins have no N in the IV. caſe, as* di Katharine *&c. not* di Katharinen.

Sect.

the Irregular De
expreſsed in this
ned after that
in His
Gram-

the Perſonals.

			N.	C. I.	III.	IV.
	1	ſ.	ih, *I.*	mir, *to me.*	mih, *me.*	
		p.	wir, *we.*	uns *us.*		
	2	ſ.	du, *thou.*	dir *to thee.*	dih, *thee.*	
		p.	ir *ye.*	euh *you.*		
erſon	3	m.	er, *he.*	ime, *to him.*	in, *him.* ſih *him ſelf*	
		f.	ſi, *ſhe.*	ir, *to her.*	ſi, *her.* ſih *her-ſelf*	
		n.	es, *it.*	ime, *to it.*	es, *it.* ſih, *it ſelf*	
		pl.	ſi, *they.*	inen, *to them*	ſi, *them,* ſih, *them ſelves*	

3. *of*
-clenſion, jointly
Table, faſhio-
of D. Wallis
learned
mar.

the Poſſeſſives.

G. *maſc.*	*foem.*	*neut.*
meiner. *my, mine.*	meine. *my, mine.*	meines. *my, mine.*
unſer, unſerer. *our, ours.*	unſere, unſer. *our, ours.*	unſer, unſeres. *our, ours.*
dein, deiner. *thy, twine.*	deine, dein *thy, thine.*	dein, deines *thy, thine.*
ewer, ewerer. *your yours.*	ewere, ewer. *your yours.*	ewer, ewer. eres. *your, yours.*
ſein ſeiner *his hisne*	ſeine, ſein. *his, hisne.*	ſein, ſeines *his, hisne.*
ir, irer. *her, hers.*	ire, ir. *her, hers.*	ir, ires. *her, hers.*
ſein, ſeiner. *its.*	ſeine ſein. *its.*	ſein, ſeines *its.*
ir irer. *their theirs.*	ire, ir. *their theirs.*	ir, ires. *their theirs.*

	N.	Cas. I.	III.	IV.
Interrogativs of — a person.	S.	wer? *who?*	weme ?	wen ?
	m.	welher ? *which ?*	welhem ? *to whom?*	welhen? *whom ?*
Interrogativs of — a thing.	f.	wer? *who?* welhe ? *which ?*	weme ? welher ? *to whom ?*	wen ? welhe ? *whom ?*
	n.	was ? *what ?* welhes ? *which ?*	weme ? *to what?* welhem ? *to which ?*	was ? *what ?* welhes ? *which ?*
Interrogativs of — both.	P. all g.	welhe ? *which ? who ?*	welhen ? *to whome?*	welhe? *who or which ?*
Demonstrativs of — a person	S m.	der, *this* diser, *that* jener, *the other.*	deme, diſem, jenem *to this &c*	den, *this* diſen, *that* jenen *the other.*
	f.	di, *this.* diſe, *that.* jene *the other.*	der, diſer jener *to this &c.*	di, *this.* diſe, *that.* jene, *the other.*
Demonstrativs of — a thing.	n.	das, *this* diſes, *that* jenes, *the other.*	deme diſem jenem *to this &c.*	das, *this.* diſes *that.* jenes *the other.*
Demonstrativs of — both.	P.	di, *these.* diſe, jene *the others*	denen, diſen jenen *to those others,*	di, *those.* diſe, jene *the others*

wes? weſsen ? *whoſe ? of*
welhes ? welhen ? *what man.*

---

wes ? weſsen ? *whoſe ? of*
welher ? *what woman?*

---

wes ? weſsen ? *of what*
welhes ? welhen ? *thing ? whereof?*

---

welher ? *whoſe ?*

---

deſs, deſsen. *of this.*
diſes, diſen. *of that.*
jenes, jenen. *of the other.*

---

der, dero. diſer, jener.
of this. of that. of the other.

---

deſs, deſsen. diſes, diſen.
jenes, jenen.
of this, of that, of the other.

---

der, derer, dero, diſer, jener.
of theſe. of thoſe. of the other.

as the first number or the beginning of all the numbres ein *or* einer; eine; ein *or* eines, *one, by forsaking its numerical signification becomes the indefinit article answering the English A or AN, in the plural* einige *any or some: so the personal and Demonstrativ* der, di, das *that, loses its emphasis of demonstration and becomes an auxiliar adjectiv of the definit nouns or the definit article, the declension of both we have seen in the end of the next foregoing section.* *m.* kein *or* keiner *nullus*, *f.* keine *nulla*, *n.* kein *or* keines *nullius*; *m.* ider *or* ein ider, *f.* ide *or* eine ide, *n.* ides *or* ein ides *every*; *m.* idweder *or* ein idweder, *f.* idwede *or* eine idwede, *n.* idwedes *or* ein idwedes, *everyone*; *m.* igliher *or* ein igliher, *f.* iglihe *or* eine iglihe, *n.* iglihes *or* ein iglihes, *each*; *m.* ein anderer *or* der andere, *f.* di *or* eine andere, *n.* ein anderes *or* das andere *an other or the other*; *m.* selbiger *or* selber *and* derselbige *or* derselbe, *f.* selbige *or* selbe *and* diselbige *or* diselbe, *n.* selbiges *or* selbes *and* dasselbige *or* dasselbe, *that or the same*; *m.* manher, *f.* manhe, *n.* manhes manhes *some or many*; *the duall* beide *both and the plurall* etlihe *or* einige *some or any are all declined as the demonstrative* diser, diese, dises; *but note only, that the mentioned words served by either of the articles have in their third singular case the termination N instead of M, and in the second they take N in stead of* S, *e. g.* eines menshen geld *or* des einen menshens geld ist so gut als des

anderen, *the money of one man is as good as that of the other*; gebet idem *or* idwedem *and* einem iden *or* einem idweden was ſein iſt, *give every one what is hisne &c.*

iderman *or* ein iderman, *everybody*; jeman *and* imann (*of old* ieman *and* iaman *qs.* i-ein-mann) *ſomebody*; nimann *or* niman (*of old* ni-a-mann *or* nieman *qs.* niht ein mann *i. no man or*) *no-body*, *are all three uſed only in the ſingular of both ſexes and declined regularly.*

ietwas, iht, ihts *or* ihtwas, *ſomewhat or ought*, nihtes *or* nihts *nothing or nought*, *neutre ſubſtantives uſed only in the ſingular are immoveable as well, as the following adjectivs of all gendres and numbres:*

So, *who or which is uſed as the relative* welher, e, es, *but never after a preposition.* ſelbeſt, ſelb'ſt, ſelb'ſten, ſelber, ſelb-ſelb'ſt *or* ſelb-ſelb'ſten *for the better demonſtration and the greater emphaſis are commonly added as adjectivs to all manners of ſubſtantivs, like the word ſelf or own-ſelf in Engliſh, where this is a ſubſtantiv e.g. myſelf* ih ſelber *not* mein ſelber *&c.* waſer *or* waſerlei, *when they aſk, doe ſignify which or of what ſort and nature; elſe they denote whatſoever. the later receives ſometimes alſo the plurall termination.*

the poſſeſsivs ſtanding before halben *or* wegen, *receiv a T, e.g.* meinet wegen *for my ſake*, euret halber *or* halben *for your ſake &c. but when either* mein, dein, ſein *&c. or* meiner deiner ſeiner *&c. is to be uſed*, *ſee the* 1. *Sect. of that chapt. N.* 3. *R.* 3.

Chapt. II. of the Verball Derivation or Conjugation.

We have only Two definit moods viz. Rect and Oblique, whereof the former comprehends the narrative, indicative, interrogative &c. of the Latins, and the later denotes their conjunctive, subjunctive, conditionall and permissive, potentiall and optative, imperative and adhortative &c. Either of them hath no more than two single tenses, the rest being circumscribed, whereof the first person is denoted here by the numb. 1, the second by 2, and the third by 3, to avoid the teadious repetition of the personall particles.

Sect. I. of the Auxiliar Verbes and those of the Greater Anomaly.

I. Haben, *to have.*

Rect Mood. Present Tense.

N. 1. habe, *have.*
S. 2. haſt, *haſt.*
3. hat, *hath.*

Pl. 1, 3 haben, 2. habet — *have.*

Imperfect.

S. 1, 3 hatte, 2 hatteſt, *had, hadſt.*

P. 1, 3 hatten, 2. hattet — *had.*

Perfect.

S. 1. habe, 2. haſt, &c. gehabt. *have, haſt, had, &c.*

More then perfect.

S.	1. hatte	gehabt.	had	had.
	2. hatteſt		hadſt	
	&c.		&c.	

Futur.

S.	1. werde	haben.	ſhall	have.
	2. wirſt		wilt	
	&c.		&c.	

ſee the IVth. verbe werden.

the compound and paulo-mox-futurs are eaſily to be formed as well here as elſewhere.

Oblique M. *Preſent.*

S.	1 3 habe, *have.*	P.	1 3 haben	*have.*
	2. habeſt, *haſt.*		2. habet	
	2. habe, *have.*			

Imperfect.

S.	1 3 hætte, *had.*	P.	1 3 hætten	*h. l.*
	2. hætteſt, *hadſt*		2. hættet	

Perfect.

S.	1. habe	gehabt,	have	had.
	2. habeſt		haſt	
	&c.		&c.	

More then perf.

S.	hætte	gehabt.	had	had.
	hætteſt		hadſt	
	&c.		&c.	

Futur. I.

S.	1. werde	haben.	ſhall	have.
	2. werdeſt		wilt	
	&c.		&c.	

Futur. II.

S { 1. würde / 2. würdest } haben. { *should* / *wouldst* } *have.*

O. M. *Presen.*

S. { 1 } wolle, *will.* / 3 } wollest *wilt.* / 2. } wolle *be willing.* P. { 1 } wollen / 3 } / 2. wollet } *will.*

the rest of this and the Infinit moods is declined as the precedent verbe, which may be noted also in the following words, where and whensoever we leave somewhat out; for we have No Defectivs at all.

III. Sein *to Be.*

M. R. *Present.*

S. { 1. bin, *am.* / 2. bist, *art.* / 3. ist, *is.* Pl. { 1 } sind / 3 } / 2. seid } *are.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1 } war *was.* / 2 } / 3. warest *wast.* Pl. { 1 } waren / 3 } / 2. waret } *were.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. bin / 2. bist / &c. } gewesen. *have* / *hast* / &c. } *been.*

Morethanperf.

S. { 1. war / 2. warest / &c. } gewesen. { *had* / *hadst* / &c. } *been.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde / 2. wirst / &c. } sein. *shall* / *wilt* / &c. } *bee*

O. M. *Present.*

S.	1	ſei *or*	*been.*	P.	1	ſein
	3	ſeye,	*bee.*		3	
	2	ſeyeſt,	*beeſt.*		2.	ſeid
		ſey	*bee.*			
		biſs				

be.

Imperfect.

S.	1	wære, *were.*	P.	1	wæren	*were.*
	3			3		
	2.	wæreſt, *wert.*		2	wæret	

Perfect.

S.	1. ſeye	geweſen.	*have*	*been.*
	2. ſeyeſt		*haſt*	
	&c.		*&c.*	

Morethenperfect.

S.	wære	geweſen.	*had*	*been.*
	wæreſt		*haſt*	
	&c.		*&c.*	

Futur. I.

S.	1. werde	ſein.	*ſhall*	*bee*
	2. wirſt		*will*	
	&c.			

Futur. II.

S.	1. wůrde	ſein.	*ſhould*	*bee.*
	2. wůrdeſt		*wouldſt*	
	&c.		*&c.*	

note, when you put the participle preterit of the principall verbe betwixt the two auxiliars of theſe futurs, you have alwayes the paulo-mox-futures, as you may ſee here and imitate it both in the foregoing and the following verbes.

Paulo-mox Futur I. and II.

S. { 1. werde / 2. wirſt / &c. } gewesen ſein. { *ſhall* / *wilt* / &c. } *have been.*

S. { 1. würde / 2. würdeſt / &c. } gewesen ſein. { *ſhould* / *wouldſt* / &c. } *have been.*

the Infinitiv is of no difficulty and partly known already.

IV. werden *to Become.*

this word hath ſeverall ſignifications, which in Engliſh muſt be expreſſed by diverſe words, ſignifying ſometimes neutropaſſively as much as to Become, and ſometimes as much as to Be, where it is the auxiliary of the Paſſives, as we ſhall ſee; but often it denoteth nothing elſe but the time to come both in activ, paſſiv and neutrall futurs.

Pr. R. Preſent.

S { 1. werde *become.* / 2. wirſt *becomeſt.* / 3. wird *becometh.* } P { 1 3 werden / 2. werdet } *become.*

Imperfect.

S { 1 3 würde, *became.* / 2. würdeſt, *becameſt.* } P { 1 3 würden / 2. würdet } *became.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. bin / 2. biſt / &c. } worden. { *am* / *art* / &c. } *become.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. war / 2. wareſt / &c. } worden { *was* / *wert* / &c. } *became.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde / 2. wirſt / &c. } werden. { *ſhall* / *wilt* / &c. } *become.*

M. O. *Preſent.*

S. { 1 / 3 } werde / 2 werdeſt / werde } *become.* P. { 1 / 2 / 3. werdet } *become.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1 / 3 } würde *became.* P. { 1 / 3 } würden / 2. würdeſt, *becameſt* / 2. würdet } *became.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. ſei / 2. ſeiſt / &c. } worden. { *been* / *beeſt* / &c. } *become.*

More than perfect.

S. { 1. wære / 2. wæreſt / &c. } worden. { *were* / *wert* / &c. } *become.*

Futur. I. and II.

S. { 1. werde *and* würde / 2. werdeſt *and* würdeſt &c. } werden.

S. { *ſhall and ſhould* / *wilt and wouldſt* / &c. } *become.*

Paulo-mox-futur I. and II.

S.	1. werde *and* würde		*shall and* wor- *should*	*been*
	2. werdeſt *and* würdeſt		den *wilt and* ſein. *wouldſt*	be- *come.*
	&c.		&c.	

V. Sollen *to Shall.*

this word ſignifyeth alwayes a neceſsity or obligation, but never a futurition, as it does in the Engliſh and the Lowdutch toungs.

R. M. *Preſent.*

S.	1 3	ſoll,	*ſhall.*	P. 1 3 ſollen *ſhall.*
	2 ſolt ſolſt		*ſhalt.*	2. ſoll et

Imperfect.

S.	1 3	ſolte	*ſhould.*	P. 1 3 ſolten *ſhould.*
	2. ſoltſt		*ſhouldſt.*	2. ſoltet

Perfect.

S.	1. habe		*have*	
	2. haſt	geſolt.	*haſt*	*ſhould.*
	&c.		&c.	

Morethanperfect.

S.	1. hatte	ge-	*had*	
	2. hatteſt	ſolt.	*hadſt*	*ſhould.*
	&c.		&c.	

Futur.

S.	1. werde		*ſhall*	
	2. wirſt	ſollen.	*wilt*	*ſhall.*
	&c.		&c.	

O. M. *Preſent.*

S. { 1 3 } ſolle, *ſhall.* P. { 1 3 } ſollen { *ſhall.*
2 ſolleſt, *ſhalt.* 2. ſollet

the Imperfect is like that of the Reſt mood, and the reſt is known either by the foregoing or the regular Formation.

VI. kœnnen, *Can.*

R. M. *Preſent.*

S. { 1 3 } kann, *can.* P. { 1 3 } kœnnen { *can.*
2. kanſt, *canſt.* 2. kœnnet.

Imperfect.

S { 1 3 } konte *could.* P. { 1 3 } konten { *could.*
2. konteſt *couldſt.* 2. kontet

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe 2. haſt &c. } gekont. { *have haſt &c.* } *could.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. hatte 2. hatteſt &c. } gekont. { *had hadſt &c.* } *could.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde 2. wirſt &c. } kœnnen. { *ſhall wilt &c.* } *can.*

O. *M.* *Preſent.*

S. { 1 3 kœnne / 2 kœnneſt / kœnne } *can* P. { 1 3 kœnnen / 2. kœnnet } *can.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1 3 kœnte *could* / 2. kœnteſt *couldſt* } P. { 1 3 kœnten / 2. kœntet } *could.*

VII. Mœgen *to may.*

R. M. *Preſent.*

S. { 1 3 mag *may.* / 2. magſt *mayſt* } P. { 1 3 mœgen / 2. mœget } *may.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1 3 mohte *might.* / 2. mohteſt *mighſt.* } P. { 1 3 mohten / 2. mohtet } *might.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe / 2. haſt / &c. } ge- moht { *have* / *haſt* / &c. } *might.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. hatte / 2. hatteſt / &c. } ge- moht. { *had* / *hadſt* / &c. } *might.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde / 2. wirſt / &c. } mœgen { *ſhall* / *wilt* / &c. } *may.*

O. M. *Present.*

S { 1, 3 } mœge
2 { mœgest, mœge } *may.* P. { 1, 3 } mœgen, 2. mœget } *may.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1, 3 } mœhte *might.* P { 1, 3 } mœhten, 2. mœhtet } *might.*
2. mœhtest *mightst.*

these two verbes differ thus kœnnen *signifyes the power and strength of the agent or a possibility of a thing; but* mœgen *implies the right (and sometimes the will) of the agent.*

VIII. Mussen *Must or Owght.*

R. M. *Present.*

S. { 1, 3 } muss, 2. must } must. P. { 1, 3 } mů̈ssen, 2. mů̈sset } *must.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1, 3 } muste *ought* P. { 1, 3 } musten, 2. mustet } *ought.*
2. mustest *oughtest.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe, 2. hast, &c. } gemust. { *have, hast, &c.* } *must.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. hatte, 2. hatst, &c. } gemust { *had, hadst, &c.* } *must.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde, 2. wirst, &c. } mů̈ssen. { *shall, wilt, &c.* } *must.*

O. M. *Present.*

S. { 1, 3 } můſse; 2 { můſseſt, můſse } must. P. { 1, 3 } můſsē; 2. můſset } must.

Imperfect.

S. { 1, 3 } můſte; 2. můſteſt } ought. P. { 1, 3 } můſten; 2. můſtet } ought

IX. Laſsen *to let or Grant, likewiſe to Cauſe or Bid.*

R. *M.* *Present.*

S. { 1. laſse *let.*; 2. læſseſt *letteſt.*; 3. læſset *let.* } P. { 1, 3 } laſsen; 2. laſset } *let.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1, 3 } liſe *let.*; 2. liſeſt *letſt.* } P. { 1, 3 } liſen; 2. liſet } *let.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe; 2. haſt; &c. } gelaſsen { *have*, *haſt*, &c. } *granted.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. hatte; 2. hatſt; &c. } gelaſsen { *had*, *hadſt*, &c. } *granted.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde; 2. wirſt; &c. } laſsen { *ſhall*, *wilt*, &c. } *grant.*

O. M. *Present.*

S. { 1 / 3 } lasse, 2 lassest, lasse } *let.* { 1 / 3 } lassen, 2. lasset } *let.*

X. Dærfen *to Dare or May.*

R. M. *Present.*

S. { 1 / 3 } darf *dare.* 2. darfest *darest.* P. { 1 / 3 } dærfen, 2. dærfet } *dare.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1 / 3 } darfte *durst.* 2. darftest *durstest* P. { 1 / 3 } darften, 3. darftet } *durst.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe, 2. hast, &c. } gedorft. *have, hast, &c.* } *might.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. hatte, 2, hattst, &c. } gedarft. *had, hadst, &c.* } *might.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde, 2. wirst, &c. } darfen *shall, wilt, &c.* } *dare, may.*

O. M. *Present.*

S. { 1 / 3 } dærfe *may.* 2. dærfest *mayst.* P. { 1 / 3 } dærfen, 2. dærfet } *may.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1 / 3 } dærfte, 2. dærftest } *durst.* P. { 1 / 3 } dærftē, 2. dærftet } *durst.*

ſome dialects uſe in this verbe ſometimes O *or* U *in ſtead of an* A, *and* œ *or* ů *inſtead of an* Æ. *to the greater anomaly is alſo brought the following verbe, though it be conſtrued with other verbs by the help of the particle* zu *to e. g.* er weis zu heuheln *he knows to diſsemble.*

XI. Wiſsen, *to Know.*

M. R. *Preſent.*

S. { 1, 3 } weis { *know*, *knoweth* }
2. { weiſeſt, weiſt } *knoweſt*

P. { 1, 3 } wiſsē, 2. wiſset } *know.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1, 3 } wuſte *knew, wote.*
2. wuſteſt *kneweſt.*

P. { wuſten, wuſtet } *knew.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe, 2. haſt, &c. } gewuſt { *have*, *haſt*, *&c.* } *known.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. hatte, 2. hatſt, &c. } gewuſt { *had*, *hadſt*, *&c.* } *known.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde, 2. wirſt, &c. } wiſsen. { *ſhall*, *wilt*, *&c.* } *know.*

O. M. *Preſent.*

S. { 1, 3 } wiſse, 2. { wiſseſt, wiſse } *know.*

P. { 1, 3 } wiſsē, 2. wiſset } *know.*

Imperfect.

S { 1 / 3 } wůste / 2. wůstest } *wist, knew.* P. { 1 / 3 } wůsten / 2. wůstet } *wist, knew*

the rest goes after the Analogie.

Sect. 2. *of* the Regular Formation.

I. of the Activs.

the rect present is formed of the indefinit (as the prime and principal verb signifying more directly the notion of action) by putting away the letter N *in the first singular and adding instead therof the two letters* ST *in the second, and the Letter* T *in the third singular, as also in the second plurall; but the first and third persons of the greater number are like the infinitiv, which here in our dialect has the finall* N, *e. g.* essen, fressen *&c. used also in the Belgick* eeten, freeten; *in the Allemannick* æssan, fræssan; *in the Angle Saxonick* etan, fretan; *whereas others omitte it, as the Turingick* geæse, gefræsse; *the Silesian* æssæ, fræssæ; *and the English* to eate, to frette.

R. M. *the Present.*

S. { 1. libe *love.* / 2. libest *lovest.* / 3. libet *loveth.* } P. { 1 / 3 } liben / 2. libet } *love,*

the Imperfect

hath the same addition of terminations in the second singular and in the whole plurall, receiving besides these everywhere before the finall characteristick vowell of both numbers the syllable ET *thus*

S. { 1 / 3 } libete *loved.* P. { 1 / 3 } libetē *loved.*
2. libeteſt *lovedeſt* 2. libetet

the very ſame conjugation has the oblique mood in both tenſes, except in the ſecond ſingular of the preſent the two letters ST are taken away, when we beſeech or command, elſe not; the like apocope ſuffers alſo the third of the ſame number and tenſe in what ſignification ſoever by putting away the letter T, as in Engliſh, thus

O. M. *Preſent.*

S. { 1 / 3 } libe P. { 1 / 3 } liben *love.*
2. { libeſt / libe } *love.* 2. libet

Imperfect.

S. { 1 / 3 } libete *loved.* P. { 1 / 3 } libeten *loved.*
2. libeteſt *lovedſt.* 2. libetet

the infinit preſent is uſed with the particle zu, *Engl.* To, *Low-D.* Te, *in ſtead of the Latin gerundy and ſupins e. g.* zu liben, *Engl. to love, Lowd.* te beminnen, *Lat.* amatum, amatu, amandi. *but where and when this particle before an Infinitiv is to be uſed elſe, every one knowes not ignorant of the Engliſh toung. we uſe the infinit preſent alſo with the neuter article in ſtead of the verball ſubſtantive ſignifying an action e. g.* das liben

amatio seu actus amandi or the act of love; von dem liben, *ab or de actu amandi &c. in stead whereof we may forme from thence an other verball substantiv in* ung, *as the English in* ing, *having the same signification as the foregoing hath e. g.* di krœnung *or* das krœnen *the crowning or coronation*; di kerung und wendung *or* das keren und wenden *the turning &c. but he, that doeth this action, is expressed by the substantiv of the termination* ER, *e. g.* ein trinker *a drinker*, ein eſser *an eater*, ein anklæger *an accuſer*. *we doe decline our participles activ and passiv, of that present by adding There the letter D e. g.* libend, *loving*; *and Here by turning N into T, where (as in the Greek toung e. g.* γέγονα, γέγραφα *&c. or in old English, as we have many remainders, for instance in Chaucer* yeboren, yeleaped *&c. where G is turned to Y) we must in the head of the theam set the preformativ syllable GE, in Lowdutch* GHE, *e. g.* gelibet *loved. standing before a substantiv, they both receiv the termination* ER, *and are declined as other adjectivs e. g.*

libender. gelib'ter.

those, that have a separable preposition before themselves, receive the syll. GE *after it e. g.* un-ge-offen-baret *unrevealed*, los-ge-sprohen *absolved*, ab-ge-shûttelt *shaked off &c. the very same is to be observed of the particle* zu *in (when it makes a Supine or Gerundy) alwayes giving to the foregoing separated preposition the token of division e. g.* nah-zu forshen *to inquire after*, wider-zu geben *to give*

again, auf - zu blaſen *to blow up &c. but all the verbes beginning with* Be, Ent, Em, Er, Ver, Zer, (*as alſo* wider *and* über *when they loſe the tonick accent*) *are without this addition of the ſyll.* GE, *e. g.* begonnen *begunne*, entleibet *killed*; erlœſet *redeemed*, vergeſſen *forgotten*; zerriſſen *toren*; überwæltiget *overpowerd*, widerſprohen *contradicted &c.* Eſſen *to eate has* gegeſs -en *eaten in ſtead of* geeſſen. *in meetre and vulgar language is uſed ſometimes* geſſen, gangen, kommen *for* gegeſſen gegangen gekommen, *and everywhere both in meetre and oratory or proſe we ſay well* můſſen ſollen wollen dœrfen mœgen kœnnen *conſtrued with an expreſs infinitiv e. g.* ir hættet mir's ſagen ſollen *you had ſhould tell me of it &c. but the regular participles* gemuſt geſolt gewolt gedorft ge.roht gekont *are uſed without an infinitiv e. g.* warum aſet ir niht? ih habe niht gedorft gewolt gekont *&c. why did you not eate? i durſt not, i would not, i could not. ſee the VI. R. in the irreg. form. of the leſs anomaly.*

the Latin participles in RUS *and* DUS *are circumſcribed as in Engliſh e. g. lecturus* ein -er der da leſen wird *one that will read or goes to read &c. verba legenda* di vor zu leſenden worte *or* di worte ſo da ſollen (můſſen) vorgeleſen werden *words that ſhall be read. ſo likewiſe the perfect tenſe and the more-than-perfect are formed of the participle preterit added to its propre auxiliar verbe, as in Engliſh, e. g.*

R. M. *Perfect.*

S. 1. habe, 2. haſt, &c. gelibet — *have, haſt, &c.* *loved.*

More then perfect.

S. 1. hatte, 2. hatteſt, &c. gelibet — *had, hadſt, &c.* *loved.*

O. M. *Perfect.*

S. 1. habe, 2. habeſt, &c. gelibet — *have, haſt, &c.* *loved.*

More then perfect.

S. 1. hætte, 2. hætteſt, &c. gelibet — *had, hadſt, &c.* *loved.*

Inf. M. *Perfect.*

gelibet haben *to have loved.*

But the neuters receiv the auxiliar of the paſsiv

e.g.

R. M *Perfect.*

S. 1. bin, 2. biſt, &c. geſtanden — *ſtood, ſtoodſt, &c.*

More then perfect.

S. 1. ware, 2. wareſt, &c. geſtanden — *ſtood, ſtoodſt, &c.*

O. M. *Perfect.*

S. 1. ſei, 2. ſeiſt, &c. geſtanden — *did, didſt, &c.* *ſtand.*

More then perfect.

S.	1. wære 2. wæreſt &c.	geſtanden	*did* *didſt* &c.	*ſtand.*

Inf. M. *Perfect.*

geſtanden ſein *to have ſtood.*

we doe alſo circumſcribe all Futurs of all verbes and moods with the word werden *(which ſee) joined to the infinit of the principal verbe, e.g.*

in the reſt mood:

S.	1. werde 2. wirſt &c.	liben	*ſhall* *wilt* &c.	*love.*

in the Oblique:

S.	1. würde 2. würdeſt &c.	liben	*ſhould* *wouldeſt* &c.	*love.*

Paulomox, futur I. and II.

S.	1 werde würde	gelibet	*ſhall* *ſhould*	*have loved*
	2 wirſt würdeſt	haben	*wilt* *wouldſt*	
	&c.		&c.	

in the Infinit.

liben werden *to love hereafter.*

we never uſe in good language to circumſcribe the ſingle tenſes, as the Engliſh doe, e.g. ih ahe *not* ih tue lahen *i doe laugh*, er lahe *or* er ſlûfe *not* er file ein lahender *or* afend *he fell a-laughing or a-ſleepe*, ih omme *not* ih bin kom̃end *or* ein komm-

ender *i am a-coming*, hœret ir? ſeet ir? *not* duet ir hœren? duet ir ſeen? *doe you heare? doe you ſee?* ſo ih will leſen *not* ih bin geend zu leſen *i am going to reade*, was wolte ih doh ſagen? *not* was war ih geend zu ſagen? *what was i going to ſay?*

II. of the Paſsives.

the paſsives uſe everywhere the auxilian werden *and* ſein. *e. g.*

R. M. Preſent.

S. { 1. werde, 2. wirſt &c. } gelibet { *am, art &c.* } *loved.*

Imperfect.

S. { 1. wurde, 2. wurdeſt &c. } gelibet { *was, waſt &c.* } *loved.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. bin, 2. biſt &c. } gelibet worden. { *have, haſt &c.* } *been loved.*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. war, 2. wareſt &c. } gelibet worden { *had, hadſt &c.* } *been loved.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde, 2. wirſt &c. } gelibet werden { *ſhall, wilt &c.* } *be loved.*

O. M. Preſent.

S. { 1. werde; 2. werdeſt, werde } gelibet { *been, beeſt, bee &c.* } *loved.*

&c.

Imperfect.

S. { 1. würde / 2. würdeſt / &c. } gelibet { *were* / *wert* / &c. } *loved.*

Perfect.

S. { 1. ſei / 2. ſeiſt / &c. } gelibet worden { *have* / *haſt* / &c. } *been loved*

Morethenperfect.

S. { 1. wære / 2. wæreſt / &c. } gelibet worden { *had* / *hadſt* / &c. } *been loved*

Futur. I. and II.

S. { 1 { werde / würde } 2 { werdeſt / würdeſt / &c. } } gelibet werden { *ſhall* / *ſhould* / *wilt* / *wouldſt* / &c. } *be loved*

Paulomoxfutur I. and II.

S. { 1 { werde / würde } 2 { wirſt / würdeſt / &c. } } gelibet worden ſein { *ſhall* / *ſhould* / *wilt* / *wouldſt* / &c. } *have been loved*

Inf. M. *Preſent.*

gelibet werden *to be loved.*

Perfect.

gelibet worden ſein *to have been loved.*

Futur.

werden gelibet werden *to be loved hereafter.*

in ſtead of theſe two later tenſes which we formed here and elſewhere, is alwayes uſed as well by us as the Engliſh the Oblique mood with the particle dáſs *that, either expreſsed or underſtood, both here in the paſsive and in any other verb.*

Supine and Gerundie.

gelibet zu werden *to be loved.*

Participle.

gelibet *loved.*

III. of the Reciprocks.

the Reciprock and Neuter verbes are after the ſame manner (that is either as the Activs or as the Paſsivs) conjugated, where the Neuter-activs or Reciprocks uſe the auxiliar haben *to have, e. g.*

Preſent.

S. 1. frewe mih *rejoice.*
2. freweſt dih *rejoiceſt.*
3. frewet ſih *rejoiceth.*

P. 1, 3 frewen uns, ſih *rejoice.*
2. frewet euh *rejoice.*

Imperfect.

S. 1, 3 frewete mih, ſih *rejoiced.*
2. frewteſt dih *rejoicedſt.*

P. { 1 / 3 } freweten { uns / ſih } *rejoiced.*
2. frewetet euh

Perfect.

S. { 1. habe mih / 2. haſt dih / &c } gefrewet { *have* / *haſt* / &c } *rejoiced.*

Morethenperfect.

P. { 1. hatte mih / 2. hatteſt dih / &c. } gefrewet { *had* / *hadſt* / &c. } *rejoiced.*

Futur.

S. { 1. werde mih / 2. wirſt dih / &c. } frewen { *ſhall* / *wilt* / &c } *rejoice.*

IV. of the neuter - paſsivs.

but theſe to wit the neuter-paſsivs (none of them as Neutres excepted) we decline with the auxiliary ſein *in the Preterits, and with* werden *in the futurs. which theſe verbes be, we will note on their forehead with the letter N in the enſuing table of the leſs anomaly, where they, as many there are irregulars, occurre with their ſignification, needleſs here to be ſet down, but the regulars are thoſe that follow* bœrſten *to burſt*, erblaſsen *or* verblaſsen *to become pale*, errœten *to bluſh*, erſtarren *or* verſtarren *to become ſtiff for cold or amazement*, erſtaunen *to ſtart back and be aſtoniſhed, n.* ſegeln *to ſail, n.* ſtürzen *to fall down*, verarmen *to become poor*, verblinden *to become blind*, verblüen *to loſe or ſhed the flowers*, verfaulen *to rotte*, ver-

lamen *to become halting*, vernarren *to become like a fool*, verſmahten *to languiſhe*, verſtummen *to become dumb*, verweſen *to decay*, zerlehſen *to gape or chink*, *n.* zerreiſſen *to goe in pieces*, *n.* zien *to betake himſelf from one place to an other. mind well*, that we ſayd in the rule **neuter paſsives as neuters.** for ſome of them are often alſo *activs ſignifying a tranſitiv action*, and then they are declined in their preterits with the *activ auxiliary* e. g. zerreiſen *ſignifyeth actively to teare in pieces*, but *neutraly to goe in pieces* &c. likewiſe we ſay er iſt vo'm pferde geſtürzet (*neutraly*) *he is fallen headlong from the horſe*, and (*actively*) ſi haben in von dem pferde geſtürzet *they have pulled him from the horſe.*

V. of the Impersonals.

the impersonals are formed as in Engliſh thus e. g. es regnet, es ſneyet, es weet, *it raineth*, *it ſnoweth*, *it bloweth*; mann ſaget *men ſay*, es gezimet uns, es gefællet uns, es beluſtiget uns tugendhaftig zu ſein *it behoveth us*, *it pleaſeth us*, *it delighteth us to be vertuous.*

VI. of the Derivativs.

we doe circumſcribe the derivativ verbes of the Latins, *as the Inchoativs or augmentativs with the word* werden e. g. ih werde gros, fett, ſtumpf *or* dumm, *i growe tall or great*, *fatt*, *dull*, *Lat.* grandeſco, pingueſco, hebeteſco; es wird tag, finſter *or* naht *it groweth*

day dark or night, Lat. dieſcit, tenebraſcit, nocteſcit *&c.*

the Frequentativs we circumſcribe with the word oft, often, ofters *or* fleiſig *e. g.* ih beſuhe often *i viſit often*, ih erſuhe fleiſig *i beſeech frequently &c. that is in Latin* viſito, rogito.

the Diminutivs are circumſcribed either with the word wenig *or* ein wenig *e. g.* ih trinke ein wenig *i ſup a little*, ih ſinge ein wenig *i ſing a little or chirp &c. Lat.* ſorbillo, cantillo. *or with ſetting the ſyllable* EL *or* LE *before the later characteriſtick vowel e. g.* lahen *to laughe*, læheln *to ſmile*; ſprengen ſprengeln *or* ſprenkeln *to ſprinkle*, klingen klingeln *to make a little noiſe with the bells*, künſt-eln *to imitate an art by little and little &c. which termination* EL *or* LE *was uſed antiently alſo in the Subſtantivs, e. g.* hündel *or* hünd-le biſsel *or* biſle *&c. but now it is grown quite out of faſhion in good language. for we ſay* hündgen *little dog*, biſsgen *little bit. ſee P.* II. *chap.* 1. *Sect.* 1. *n.* 2.

this is the only One conjugation of all our Verbes, a very little differing from that of the Low-dutch and the Engliſh, as you may eaſily gueſs and judge of the compound tenſes and other moods, when you look on the two ſingle ones of the reſt to be had in each of them, the terminations whereof together with their characteriſtick vowel we have here added as an overplus in the next following table:

		High-dutch.	*Low-dutch.*	*Engliſh.*
			Preſent.	
S.	1.	E.	1. E.	1. E.
	2.	EST.	2. EST.	2. EST.
	3.	ET.	3. ET.	3. ETH.
P.	1 3	EN.	1 3 EN.	1 2 E.
	2.	ET.	2. ET.	3
			Imperfect.	
S.	1 3	ETE.	1 3 EDE.	1 3 ED.
	2.	ETEST.	2. EDEST.	2. EDEST.
P.	1 3	ETEN.	1 3 EDEN.	1 2 ED
	2.	ETET.	2. EDET.	3

Sect. 3. *of* the Leſs Anomaly in Verbes.

Thoſe verbes, that are declined irregularly in few perſons and tenſes (following everywhere elſe the regular formation) meet all together in the enſuing table, where the firſt perſon, we have ſet down only, will ſhew, how the reſt are formed, when we obſerve theſe few rules here following.

R. 1. *the halfmute characteriſtick* E *before* T *and* ST *may everywhere be ſyncopized either alone, if precede an inſeparable conſonant; or with one of two like conſonants e. g.* er lib't *he loveth*, ir lib'tet *ye loved*; gelib't *lov'd*, du ſiht'ſt *thou fighteſt*, er ſlaht *or* ſlaht-et *he killeth*, verdam't *or* verdammet *con-*

demned, er fæl't *or* fællet *he falles*, es ſhallet *or* ſhal't *it ſounds &c. this being done as well in the regular as the irregular verbes of all ſorts, uſed commonly for ſhortneſs both in meeter and familiar diſcourſing, is rather to be called a Syncope than anomaly; but the following Rules doe belong only to the verbes in hand, which muſt be well obſerved.*

R. 2. *ſuch irregulars to wit verbes of the leſs anomaly change their characteriſtick vowel in the* 2. *and* 3. *ſingular of the rect preſent as* A *both ſingle and in the dipth.* AU *into* Æ, *e. g.* ih ſlafe, du ſlæfeſt, ſi ſlæfet; ih ſaufe, du ſæufeſt, er ſæufet *from* ſlafen *to ſleepe*, ſaufen *to drink as a beaſt &c.* E *both long and ſhort into* I, *e. g.* ih leſe, du liſeſt, er liſet, *from* leſen *to reade*; ih fehte, du fihteſt, er fiht *or* fihtet, *from* fehten *to fight. the very ſame is done alſo in the* 2. *ſingular of the oblique mood when we beſeech or command e. g.* fihte du *fighte thou*, liſe du *reade thou*, iſſe du *eate thou &c.* O *into* œ, *e. g.* ih komme, du kommeſt *and* kœmmeſt, er kommet *and* kœmmet *or* kœmt *from* kommen *to come.* û *into* eu, *e. g.* ih lûge, du leugſt, er leugt *from* lûgen, *to tell a lye &c.*

R. 3. *the like changing of letters into others is in the imperfect of both definit moods, as alſo in the preterit Participle, which particularly turneth very often the termination* ET *into* EN *as in Engliſh. for in both numbers of the rect Imperfect we change*

A *ſingle and long into* U, *e. g.* ih grabe

i digg or carve, ih grube, du grubest &c. AU *and* A *short into* I *long and sometimes into* O *short e. g.* ih laufe *i runne*, ih lif *and* loffe, du lifest *and* loffest &c. ih halte *i hold*, ih hilte, du hiltest &c.

short	E	*into* A	helfe *i helpe*, halfe *holp*.
	I	*e. g.*	singe *i singe*, sange *song*.
	O	ih	komme *i come* kame *came*.
long	U		tue *i doe*, tate *did*.

æ	*indif-*	*into* O *and*	wæge woge wuge.
ů	*ferent*	*in some di-*	slůsse slosse slusse.
e	*long*	*-alects in*	shere shore shure.
œ		*to* U *e. g.*	swœre swore swure.
		ih	

from wægen *to weigh*, slůssen *to shut*, sheren *to sheare*, swœren *to curse*. *except* geben *to give has* ih gabe du gabest; seen *to see*, ih sae du saest; steen *to stande*, ih stande, stonde, stunde; geen *to goe*, ih ginge *or* gange, du gangest *or* gingest. EI *into* I, *and* EY *into* Y *or* I *e. g.* ih shreye *crye*, ih shrye; es sneyet *it snow-eth*, es snye *or* snie; sleifen *to wbet*, ih sliffe; beisen *to bite*, ih bisse; stosen *to thrust*, ih stise; bleiben *to stay*, ih blibe; shreiben *to write*, ih shribe; weisen *to showe*, ih wise du wisest &c. *but* weisen *to whiten is regular. besides this we have yet an other irregularity here, when* ing *and* enk *is changed into* ah *e.g.* bringen *to bringe*, ih brahte *i broughte*, du brahtest; denken *to thinke*, ih dahte *i thought*, du dahtest &c.

finaly note here as well as in both ſingle tenſes of the Oblique, that the double conſonants and the compound ones of like letters are alwayes changed into the oppoſite ſingle ones as often as the preceding vowel becomes long in pronouncing e. g. ih bakke *of old* bahe *or* bache *i bake*, ih ſize *of old* ſitſe *or* ſitze *i ſite, Imperf. R.* ih buge *or* buke *i baked*, ih ſaſe *i ſate*; *Imperf. Obl.* ih bůge *or* bůke, ih ſæſe *&c. on the contrary they (the ſingle conſonants) are changed into doubled or compound ones, if this (the foregoing vowel) be ſhort e. g.* ih reite *i ride*, ih ritte; ih beiſe *i bite* ih biſſe, *many exampels more we finde in this and in the following Rule, as alſo Part* 1. *chap.* 3. *ſect.* 1. *n.* 2.

R. 4. *the charact-eriſtick vowels:*

a	*of the Imperfect are changed in that of the oblique into*	æ	*as* ih	aſe; æſe
o		œ		ſohte; ſœhte
u		ů		floſse; floœſse
				ſluſse, ſlůſse.
				ſworeſwœre
				ſwure ſwůre

from eſsen *to eate*, fehten *to fight*, flůſen *to flowe*, ſlůſsen *to ſhut*, ſwœren *to curſe or ſweare.*

R. 5. *thoſe irregulars, that have for their characteriſtick vowel either A, E clear, O or* U *in the indefinit preſent, keepe it in the participle preterit and change the regular* T *into* N *e. g.* ſlafen *to ſleepe*, geſlafen; geben *to give*, gegeben; ſeen *to ſee*, geſeen; ſtoſen *to thruſt*, geſtoſen; tuen *to doe*, ge

tun, *as the Franconias in their dialect ſtill ſay, in lieu whereof we uſe* getan. *but* E, *when obſcure in pronunciation, is changed into an* A *e. g.* ſteen *to ſtande*, geſtanden; geen *to goe*, gegangen; ſhæren *to ſhave or ſheare is better ſpelled with an* æ *then* e, *and ſo therefore* geſhoren *according to the following rule.*

au	*are changed into an O. with the termination* EN *e. g.*	ſaugen *to ſucke*, geſogen; ſaufen *to drinke as a beaſt*, geſoffen &c.	
æ		wægen *to weigh*, gewogen; geberen *to bringe forth*, geboren &c.	
i		ſhiben *to move*, geſhoben; kiſen *to choſe*, gekoſen &c.	
œ		hœben *to lift up*, gehoben; ſwœren *to ſweare* geſworen &c.	
û		bûgen *or* bigen *to bowe*, gebogen; rûhen *to ſmell*, gerohen &c.	

thither is to be referred erſhallen *to reſound* erſhollen; *but* ligen *to laye down has* gelegen.

Ei *is turned to* I, *and* EY *to* Y *or* I, *but the ſhort* I *in our dialect is changed into* O, *as we have ſeen juſt now; whereas in others into* U, *e. g.* ſmeiſen *to ſmite*, geſmiſsen; ſhreyen *to crye*, geſhryen *or* geſhrien; rinnen *to rinne*, geronnen *or* gerunnen; gewinnen *to winne*, gewonnen *or* gewunnen; ſinken *to ſinke*, geſonken *or* geſunken; zwingen *to force*, gezwongen *or* gezwungen; ſizen *to ſit hath* geſeſsen; *but*

bringen *to bringe*, gebraht; denken *or* gedenken *to thinke*, gedaht.

the regular termination ENDET *is commonly changed into* AND, *and* ENNET *into* ANT *e. g.* ſenden *to ſend*, geſendet *and* geſand; pfænden *to take a pawn*, gepfændet *or* gepfand; bekennen *to confeſſe*, bekennet *and* bekant; trennen *to teare in pieces*, getrennet *and* getrant *&c. ſee the following table, but* blenden *to blinde hath only* geblend -et *not* gebland; *on the contrary we ſay commonly* gebrand *burnd*; *ſeldom* gebrennet *or* gebronnen.

R. 6. as the regular: ſo the irregular compounded with the ſeparable Prepoſitions (following the ſimple ones in all their irregularity) are to be divited thus 1. *in both the regular and irregular ſingle tenſes of the rect mood and, when we command or beſeech, of the Oblique the (ſeparable) prepoſitions become poſtpoſitions, that is, they are taken away from the head of the verbes and ſet after them and their following nouns e. g.* der befelig-haber gabe di ſtatt auf *the governour delivered the town, from* aufgeben; keret (wendet) das ſtunden-glaſs um *turne the houre-glaſs, from* umkeren *or* umwenden; trinket es alles aus *drinke it all off, from* austrinken; kere ſtraks wider um *goe back preſently or ſtraights.* 2. *but elſewhere as well here in the rect, when the prepoſition loſeth its emphaſis, and in any other ſignification of the oblique as alſo in the infinit preſent, paſsiv and activ participles, likewiſe in both verball nouns,*

the prepoſitiv particles keepe their place e. g. er widerleg'te ſeinen gegenteil *he refuted his antagonist*, der feind begerete, daſs der Herzog nah überleſung des briefs di veſtung auſgæbe *the enemy demanded, that the duke would deliver the fortreſs, after he had seen over the letter &c. unleſs the conjunctiv particles* daſs, ſo, wann *&c. (which usualy precede the oblique mood) be omitted; for then we followe the former observation e. g.* ſæt ih meinen bruder wider! *in stead* ih wünſhe *or* wolte God, daſs ih meinen bruder widerſæe! *i wish or would to God that i should see my brother again! see the regular formation of the participle paſsiv, and to make us the surer in the other particular irregularities, here omitted; let us hasten to their common table, where we have to note, that when there is more then one word, the first is used in one dialect, and the other in others.*

TABLE
of
the Irregular Verbes.

Preſent definit.	*Imperfect rect.*	*Particip. preterit.*
ih bakke.	bakkete	gebakken,
i bake.	buge.	gebakket.
bedarfe.	bedarfte,	bedarft,
have need of.	bedorfte.	bedorft.
beſele *commande.*	befale, befole.	befolen.
befleiſe *endeavor.*	befliſse.	befliſsen.
beginne.	beganne, begonne.	begonnen,
beginne.	begunne, begonte.	begunnen.

beiſe. *bite.*	biſse.	gebiſsen.
belle.	balle, bolle,	gebollen
barke.	bellete.	gebellet.
berge. *hide.*	barge, borge.	geborgen.
betrüge. *deceive.*	betroge.	betrogen.
bewœge.	bewœgete,	bewœget,
move.	bewoge.	bewogen.
bige, beuge.	bigete, bügete	gebogen, ge-
bœge, büge.	boge,	bœget, ge-
bowe, bende.	beugete.	beuget.
bite. *proffer.*	bote, bitete.	geboten.
bin. *am.*	ware, war.	gewelen.
binde.	bande, bonde,	gebonden,
binde.	bunde.	gebunden.
bitte. *pray.*	bate.	gebeten.
blaſe. *blowe.*	blise, blaſete.	geblaſen.
n. bleibe, *remaine.*	blibe.	gebliben.
n. { bœrſte / borſte } *burſte.*	bœrſtete. / borſtete.	gebœrſtet / geborſten.
brate.	bratete,	gebraten,
roſte.	brute.	gebratet.
n. breche, *breake.*	brage.	gebrochen.
brenne.	brande.	gebrand, gebrennet,
burne.	brennete.	gebronnen
bringe. *bringe.*	brahte.	gebraht.
darf.	darſte, dorfte.	gedarft, gedorft,
dare.	durfte.	gedurft, dœrfen.
dekke.	dekkete,	gedekket,
cover.	dekkte.	gedakkt.
dinge.	dingete, donge.	gedinget, ge-
hire.	dunge.	dongen, gedungen
n. { drenge. / dringe. / *throng.*	drange. / dronge. / drunge.	gedrongen, / gedrungen, / gedrenget.

denke. *thinke.* dahte. gedaht.
dreſhe. *threſhe.* draſhe, droſhe. gedroſhen.
eſse. *eate.* aſe. gegeſsen, geſsen.
n. falle. *falle.* file. gefallen.
fange. finge, funge, gefangen
catche. fangete.
n. fare. *fare, ride.* fure. gefaren.
fehte. fohte, gefohten.
fighte. fehtete. gefehtet.
fire } *carrie.* firete, fůr- gefůret, gefir
fůre } te, furte. -et, gefirt.
finde. fande, fonde, gefonden
finde. funde. gefunden.
flehte. flohte, geflohten,
weave, knit. flehtete. geflehtet.
n. { flůge / flige } *flye* floge, fluge. geflogen.
n. { flie / flůe } *runn away.* floe, gefloen, geflon.
n. { fliſe / flůſe } *flowe* floſse. gefloſsen.
forhte mih. forhte, geforht,
am afraid. fœrhtete. gefœrhtet.
freſse. *frette or eate as a beaſt.* fraſe. gefreſsen.
n. { frire / friſe } *freeſe.* frore, gefroren, froſe. gefroſen.
gebe. *give.* gabe. gegeben, geben.
gebære. *beare or bring forth.* gebare geborn.
gedenke, bedenke, verdenke *&c. ſee.* denke.
gefalle, befalle, verfalle, zerfalle *&c. ſee* falle.
gefriſe, gefrire. *ſee* frire, friſe.
geen. *goe.* ginge. gegangen, gangen.

. es gelinget.	es gelonge.	gelongen.
comes to paſs.	es gelunge.	gelungen.
elte. *am eſteemed.*	galte, golte.	gegolten.
genæſe. *recover.*	genaſe.	genæſen.
enûſe. *enjoye.*	genoſse.	genoſsen.
gerate.	gerite, gerûte,	geraten
geſhee.	gerute; geſhae,	geſheen,
happne.		geſhen
geſwelle,	geſwalle,	geſwollen.
ſwelle.	geſwolle.	
ewinne *win.*	gewanne,	gewonne. gewonnē.
gûſe *power*	goſse, guſse.	gegoſsen.
gûſe *out or in.*		
gleiſe.	gliſse,	gegliſsen,
gl*ſter.*	gleiſsete.	gegleiſſet.
g. gleite. *ſlide.*	glitte, gleitete.	geglitten.
glimme *glowe.*	glomme,	geglömmen.
glumme	glûmmete.	geglummet.
grabe. *digg, carve.*	grube.	gegraben.
greiſe. *touch.*	griffe.	gegriffen.
greine.	grinne,	gegrinnen.
roare.	greinete.	gegreinet.
gabe. *have.*	hatte.	gehabet, gehabt, gehat.
halte. *hold.*	hilte.	gehalten.
h hange.	hange, hinge,	gehangen.
n. *hange.*	honge, hunge.	gehænget.
hawe.	hibe.	gehawet, gehawen,
h*we.*	hawete.	gehiben.
h*iſhe.*	hiſhe,	geheiſhen,
h*mand.*	heiſhete.	geheiſhet.
eiſe. *bidde.*	hiſe.	geheiſen.
enge.	hangte,	gehenget,
nge.	hengte.	gehanget.
olſe.	halſe, holſe,	geholſen.

helpe.	hulſe.		
hœbe.	hœbete,		gehaben,
liſt up.	hube.		gehoben.
kann.	konte.	gekont,	gekœnt, ge-
can.	kunte.	kœnnet,	kœnnen.
kænne } kenne }	*knowe* kante, kennete.		gekant, gekennet.
kiſe } kuſe }	*chuſe.* kiſete, koſe.		gekiſet gekoſen.
n. klimme	klimme.		geklomben,
climbe.	klimbete.		geklimbet.
klinge.	*ſound.* klange, klonge.		geklungen,
knæte. } knete }	*kneade* knate knetete.		gekneten, geknetet.
kœre.	*chuſe.* kore, kœrete.		gekoren.
n. komme.	*come.* kame.		gekommen.
n. krihe.	*creepe.* krohe.		gekrohen.
n. kwelle.	kwalle, kwolle.		gekwollen.

ſoke or flowe out of a well.

lade.	lude,		geladen,
lode, lead.	ladete.		geladet.
laſse.	*let, leave.* liſe, liſse.		gelaſſen.
laufe.	liſe,		gelaufen,
leape. runne.	liffe.		geloffen.
leide.	*ſuffer.* litte, leidete.		gelitten.
leye.	*lend.* lie, leyete.		gelyen, geleyet.
leſe.	*reade, gather.* laſe.		geleſen.
lige.	*laye.* lage.		gelegen.
luge.	*lye.* loge.		gelogen.
mag.	*may.* mohte.	mœgen,	gemoht.
male.	*griade.* mole. mule.		gemalen.
meide.	*ſhunne.* meidete, mide.		gemiden.
mæſse } meſse }	*mea-ſure.* maſe, meſsete.		gemæſsen. gemeſset.

muſs.	muſte.	gemuſt,
muſt.		gemůſset.
næme. *take.*	name.	genommen.
nenne.	nante,	genant,
name.	nennete.	genennet.
pfeife. *whiſtle.*	pfiffe.	gepfiffen.
pflege. *uſe to.*	pflage, pfloge.	gepflogen.
preiſe.	priſe,	gepriſen,
praiſe.	preiſete.	gepreiſet.
ræhe.	ræhete.	gerohen,
revenge.	rohe.	geræhet.
rate. *gueſse or adviſe.*	rite, rute, ratete.	geraten.
rehe.	rohe,	gerohen,
rake.	rehete.	gerehet.
reibe. *rubbe.*	ribe, reibete.	geriben.
n. reiſe.	riſse.	geriſsen.
goe in pieces.		
n. reite. *ride.*	ritte.	geritten.
rihe / růhe } *ſmell.*	rohe.	gerohen.
ringe.	range, ronge.	gerongen.
wringe.	runge.	gerungen.
n. renne.	rante.	gerant,
runne.	rennete.	gerennet.
n. rinne. *flow.*	ranne, ronne.	geronnen.
rufe / ruffe } *call.*	růſe, ruffete.	geruffen. geruffet.
ſaufe. *drinke high.*	ſoffe.	geſoffen.
ſauge.	ſoge.	geſogen.
ſucke.	ſaugete.	geſauget.
ſee. *ſee.*	ſae.	geſeen.
ſende.	ſande,	geſand,
ſende.	ſendete.	geſendet.

ſeye. *ſtraine.*	ſie, ſye, ſoe.	geſoen.
ſeze	ſazte,	geſazt,
ſet.	ſezete.	geſezet.
ſhaffe.	ſhuſe,	geſhaffen.
create.	ſhaffete.	geſhaft.
ſhalle.	ſhallete,	geſhallet,
ſound.	ſholle.	geſhollen.
n. ſheide. *depart.*	ſhide.	geſhiden.
ſheine.	ſhine.	geſhinen.
ſhine.	ſheinete.	geſheinet.
ſheiſe. *ſhite.*	ſhiſse.	geſhiſsen.
ſhelte.	ſhalte,	geſholten.
chide.	ſholte.	
ſhære.	ſhore,	geſhoren.
ſhare, ſhave.	ſhure.	geſhuren.
ſhibe } *draw,*	ſhobe, ſhube.	geſhoben.
ſhûbe } *move.*	ſhibete.	geſhibet.
ſhinde.	ſhande, ſhonde.	geſhonden.
pull off the ſkin.	ſhunde.	geſhunden.
ſhite, ſhûte.	ſhittete,	geſhûtt.
ſhitte, ſhûtte.	ſhotte,	geſhutt,
power out or in.	ſhitte,	geſhittet.
ſhœpſe.	ſhœpfete,	geſhœpſet,
draw.	ſhapfte.	geſhapft.
ſhreibe. *write.*	ſhribe.	geſhriben.
n. ſhreite. *paſſe.*	ſhritte.	geſhritten.
n. erſhrække.	erſhrakke.	erſhrokken.
am ſcared.		
ſhreye { *crye* / *ſhreeke*	ſhrie, / ſhrye	geſhrien, / geſhryen.
n. ſhrumpfe *ſhrink*	ſhrumpfete,	geſhrumpfet,
ſhrûmpfe	ſhrûmpfete.	geſhrumpfen.
ſhûſe. *ſhoote.*	ſhoſse, ſhuſse.	geſhoſsen.

ſide.	ſode, ſidete,	geſoden,
ſiethe.	ſotte.	geſotten.
ſinge.	ſange, ſonge.	geſongen.
ſinge.	ſunge.	geſungen.
ſinke.	ſanke, ſonke,	geſonken,
ſinke.	ſunke.	geſunken.
ſinne. *muſe.*	ſanne,	geſonnen.
n. ſize. *ſit.*	ſaſe.	gaſeſſen.
ſlafe. *ſleepe.*	ſlife, ſluſe.	geſlafen.
ſlage. *beate.*	ſluge.	geſlagen.
ſleihe. *goe ſneeking.*	ſlihe.	geſlihen.
ſleife. *ſharpen, grinde.*	ſliffe.	geſliffen.
ſleiſe. *ſlit.*	ſliſse.	geſliſſen.
ſlinge.	ſlange, ſlonge,	geſlongen,
devour	ſlunge.	geſlungen.
ſlinke.	ſlanke, ſlonke,	geſlonken
ſwallowe.	ſlunke.	geſlunken.
ſlise / ſlûſe / ſlûſse	*ſhutte or conclude.* ſloſse, ſluſse.	geſloſsen.
ſmeiſe. *ſmite.*	ſmiſse.	geſmiſsen.
n. ſmelze. *melte.*	ſmalze. ſmolze.	geſmolzen.
	the active is regular.	
ſneide. *cutte.*	ſnitte.	geſnitten.
es ſneyet.	ſneite, ſnie,	geſneit, geſnien,
it ſnoweth.	ſnye, ſneyete.	geſneyet, geſnyen.
ſoll. *ſhall.*	ſolte.	geſolt, ſollen.
ſpeye *ſpit.* / *ſpew.*	ſpie, ſpeiete, / ſpye, ſpeyete.	geſpien, geſpyen. / geſpeit, geſpeyet
ſpinne.	ſpanne, ſponne,	geſponnen.
ſpinne.	ſpunne.	geſpunnen.
ſprehe.	ſprahe,	geſprohen.
ſpeake.	ſprage.	
ſpringe.	ſprange, ſpronge.	geſprongen,

ſpringe.	ſprunge.	geſprungen.
n. neer.	ſtande, ſtonde.	geſtanden.
ſtand.	ſtunde.	
ſtehe.	ſtahe.	geſtohen.
ſtich, pricke.	ſtage.	
act. ſtekke.	ſtekkete,	geſtekket, g
thruſt into.	ſtakkete,	ſtak't, geſtakke
n. ſtække. *ſticke.*	ſtake.	geſtække
n. ſteige. *goe up.*	ſtige.	geſtigen.
ſtæle. *ſteale.*	ſtale, ſtole.	geſtolen.
n. ſtærbe.	ſtarbe, ſtorbe.	geſtorben.
dye.	ſturbe.	
ſteube. *fly about as duſt.*	ſtobe.	geſtoben.
ſtibe.		geſteubet.

the active is regular.

ſtinke.	ſtanke, ſtonke.	geſtonken,
ſtinke.	ſtunke.	geſtunken.
ſtoſe }	ſtiſe,	geſtoſen,
ſtoſe } *puſhe.*	ſtiſe.	geſtoſen.
ſtrekke.	ſtrekkete,	geſtrekket,
ſtreche.	ſtrak'te,	geſtrakt.
ſtreihe. *touch*	ſtrihe.	geſtrihen.
ſoftly or ſtroake.		
ſtreite.	ſtritte,	geſtritten.
quarrel.	ſtreitete.	
ſwære.	ſware,	geſworen.
breed fish	ſwore, ſwærete.	
as a ſore doth.		
ſweige. *ſay nothing.*	ſwige.	geſwigen.
ſwelle. *ſwelle.*	ſwalle,	geſwollen.
ſwimme.	ſwamme.	geſwommen.
ſwimme.	ſwomme, ſwamme.	geſwummen.
n. ſwinde.	ſwande,	geſwonden.

ſhrinke. ſwonde,	ſwunde.	geſwunden.
swinge swing.	ſwange,	geſwongen.
winnowe. ſwonge, ſwunge.		geſwungen.
ſwœre: ſweare.	ſwore, ſwure.	geſworen.
tauhe.	tohte.	getauht.
am good.	tauhete.	getoht.
tue *or* due.	tate,	getan,
doe.	date.	gedan.
darf.	darſte, dorſte,	gedorft,
dare.	durſte.	gedurſt.
trage. *trudge.*	truge.	getragen.
treffe. *hit at.*	trafe, traffe.	getroffen.
treibe. *drive.*	tribe.	getriben.
trenne.	trante,	getrant,
ſeparate.	trennete.	getrennet.
n. trœte. *treade.*	trate.	getrœten
trife } *droppe.* triffe }	troffe.	getroffen.
trinke.	tranke, tronke.	getronken,
drinke.	trunke.	getrunken.
beTrige } *deceive.* beTrüge }	betroge.	betrogen.
act. verderbe.	verderbete.	verderbet,
ſpoile.	verdarbe.	verdorben.
n. become	verdarbe.	verdorben.
nought.	verdorbe, verdurbe.	
vergeſſe. *forget.*	vergaſe.	vergeſſen.
vergleihe.	verglihe,	verglihen.
compare.	vergleihete.	vergleihet.
verlire } *looſe.* verliſe }	verlore, verlure.	verloren.
	verloſe.	verloſen.
verſlage, verſlinge, *&c. ſee*		ſlage, ſlinge.
verloeſhe.	verlaſhe,	verloſhen.
goe out.	verloſhe.	verloeſht.

n. { wahse / waxe }	wuhse, wax-	gewahsen.
	waxe ete, wahsete.	gewaxen.
wæge. *weighe.*	woge, wuge.	gewogen.
walze, wælze.	walzete	gewalzet, ge-
wallowe.	wælzete. wælzet,	gewalzen.
washe	wushe,	gewashen.
washe.	washete.	
webe, wæbe.	webete, wobe.	gewebet.
weave	wæbete.	gewoben.
weihe. *give place.*	wihe.	gewihen.
weis. *knowe.*	wuste.	gewust.
weise. *shewe.*	wise.	gewisen.
wende.	wande,	gewand,
winde, turne.	wendete.	gewendet.
werbe *e. g.*	warbe, worbe,	geworben.
soldaten. *liste.*	wurbe.	
werde.	ward,	worden,
am, become.	wurde.	geworden.
wærfe	warfe, worfe,	geworfen.
throwe.	wurfe.	
winde garn.	wande,	gewonden
winde garn.	wonde. wunde.	gewunden.
will. *will.*	wolte. wollen,	gewolt.
wůrke.	wůrkete	gewůrket,
worke.	worke.	geworken.
zeye. *accuse.*	zie, zye.	gezyen, gezin-
verzeye. verzie,	verzeyete.	verzien, ver-
perdon. verzye.	verzeite.	zin, verzyen.
n. zerglœbe.	zerglobe,	zergloben,
gape.	zerglœbete.	zerglœbet,
n. zie *goe away.*	zoe. zoge.	gezogen.
zwinge.	zwange, zwon-	gezwongen,
force.	ge, zwunge.	gezwungen.

Chap. III. of
the Etymologia ſtrictly ſo called.

hitherto of the two definit parts of ſpeech; the third (being immovable and ſignifying neither a certain number nor caſe nor mood nor perſon &c.) is called therfore indefinit particles, added to thoſe, that are definit and declinable, to ſay out ſome thing, that is either not at all or at leaſt not ſufficiently expreſsed, the conſtruction whereof (which is the one only thing here to be conſidered) ſhall be ſhowne in the following chapter, leaving their ſignification (not belonging to a grammar) to a word-book or dictionary, to make the better ſpeed in the doctrin of derivation, which the particles as well as either the nouns or verbes are capable off; eſpecially becauſe we ſee, that others, treating of the German and the Engliſh toungs, have but ſlightly touched it or left it qvite out, which though if well underſtood will give a great help and light in both languages, having the greateſt congruity one with the other, as we ſhall ſee at large anon.

Sect. 1. of
the Homeborne Derivation.

like as the ſubſtantivs become adjectivs, theſe on the contrary become ſubſtantivs, and both of them become ſometimes particles: even ſo theſe all become often verbes, from whence many both nouns and particles are derived. eſpecially the ſubſtantiv is made an adjectiv in adding either one of theſe terminations, or one of the adjectivs, viz.

BAR *e. g.* ere *honour*, erbar *honeſt*; wonder *wonder*, wonderbar *wonderfull*; dinſt *office*, dinſtbar *officious*; mannbar *of age*, laugbar *deniable*, ungaſtbar *unhoſpitable or ἄξενος &c.*

IG *e. g.* hoffart *pride*, hoffærtig *proud*; maht *power*, mæhtig *powerfull*; luſt *luſt*, luſtig *luſtie*; zorn *anger*, zornig *angry &c. ſo the particle* iz *now*, izig *preſent*, geſtern *yeſter*. geſterne *of the yeſter day*, heite *to day*, heitige *hodiernus*, neulig *not long ago*, der neulige *the new &c.*

IH *or* IHT *e. g.* laus *louſe*, laufih *or* laufiht *louſie*; dörn *thorn*, dornih *or* dorniht *thorny*; feder *feather*, federih *or* federiht *feathery*; ſtein *ſtone*, ſteinih or ſteiniht *ſtony*, drekk *dirt*, drekkih *or* drekkiht *dirty &c.*

LIH *e. g.* hof *court*, hœflih *civill*; fürſt *prince*, fürſtlih *princelike*; kœnig *king*, kœniglih *kingly*; Gott *God*, gœttlih *godly &c.*

EN *e. g.* gold *gold*, gülden gœlden *or* golden *golden*; lein *line*, leinen *or* linnen *linnen*; hanf *or* hampf *hamp*, hænfen *made of hamp*; har *hair*, hæren *made of hair*; wolle *wooll*, wollen wüllen *or* wullen *woollen &c.*

ERN *e. g.* holz *wood*, hœlzern *wooden*; fleiſh *fleſh*, fleiſhern *made of fleſh &c.*

ISH *e. g.* weib *woman*, weibiſh *womaniſh*; teufel *divel*, teufeliſh *diveliſh*; hœlle *helle*, hœlliſh *helliſh*; vi *beaſt*, viiſh *beaſtly &c.*

HAFT *or* HAFTIG *e. g.* laſter *vice*, laſterhaft *or* laſterhaftig *vicious*; tugend *virtue*, tugendhaft *or* tugendhaftig *virtuous*; ernſt *earneſt*, ernſthaft *or* ernſthaftig *ſerious &c.*

SAM *e. g.* mûe *toile*, mûſam *toileſome*; fried *peace*, fridſam *peaceable*; hæil *hail*, hæilſam *ſound and good*; tugendſam *virtuous &c.*

LOS *e. g.* Gottlos *godleſs*; glaub *or* glauben *faith*, glaublos *or* glaubenlos *faithleſs*; ſprahloſe *ſpeechleſs*; ſinnlos *ſenceleſs*; fruhtlos *fruitleſs &c.*

ARM *e. g.* blut-arm *bloodleſs*; gelt-arm *poor in money &c.*

REIH *e. g.* ſig *victorie*, ſig-reih *victorious*; waſſer-reih *full of water*; kunſtreih *artificiall &c.*

VOLL *e. g.* genade *mercy*, gnaden-voll *or* genadenreih *merciefull*; freuden-voll *or* freudenreih *joy-full*; wunder-voll *or* wunderreih *wonderfull &c.*

SÛHTIG *e. g.* ſlaf-ſûhtig *given to ſleep*; zank-ſûhtig *quarrelſome*; gewinn-ſûhtig *covetous of gain &c.*

GIRIG *e. g.* rum-girih *deſirous of praiſe*; rah-girih *revengefull*; blutgirih *or* blutdœrſtig *bloodthirſty &c.*

hither are to be brought all the compounds, the later part whereof is an adjectiv, and the former a ſubſtantiv. contrary wiſe the adjectivs grow ſubſtantivs; either when we put away the ſaid adjectivs and terminations both in the alleged and in a good many other examples; or when we add theſe following terminations.

HEIT *e. g.* tronken *drunken*, tronkenheit *drunkenneſs*; vergeſsen *forgot*, vergeſsenheit *forgetfullneſs*; ſhœn *beautifull*, ſhœnheit *beauty*; ſwah *weak*, ſwahheit *weakneſs*; gleih

like, gleihheit *likeneſs*; træg *or* faul *idle or foul*, trægheit *or* faulheit *idleneſs &c.*

KEIT *e.g.* ewig *everlaſting*, ewigkeit *eternity*; nühtern *ſober*, nühternkeit *ſobriety*; barmherzig *merciſull*, barmherzigkeit *mercy*; gutherzig *goodhearty*, gutherzigkeit *goodheartineſs &c.*

NüSS *or* NISS *e. g.* gedaht *mentioned*, gedæhtnüſs *memory*; betrübt *ſad*, betrübtnis *ſadneſs*; verwand *related*, verwandnis *relation*; gefangen *taken priſoner*, gefængnis *priſon*; *ſo* verhindern *hinder*, verhindernis *hinderance*; ærgern *ſcandalize*, ærgerniſs *ſcandal &c.*

SHAFT *e.g.* bereit *or* gereit *ready*, bereitſhaft *or* gereitſhaft *readineſs*; bekant *acquainted*, bekandſhaft *acquaintance*; kund *knowne*, kundſhaft *notice &c.*

TUM *e.g.* reih *rich*, reihtum *riches*; eigen *proper*, eigentum *propriety &c.*

UNG *e. g.* veraht *deſpiced*, verahtung *contemt*; erlæuht *illuminated*, erlæuhtung *illumination*; verlæumd *ſlandred*, verlæumdung *ſlander &c.*

E *or* TE *e.g.* lâng *long*, længe *or* længte *length*; ſtreng *ſtrong*, ſtrengte *ſtrength*; gros *great or groſs*, groeſe *or* groeſse *greatneſs or groſsneſs*; ſwarz *black*, ſwærze *blackneſse &c. theſe and the like terminations are added alſo to other (concrete) ſubſtantivs to make them abſtracts or to ſignify the ſtate and condition, which the thing is in, as*

SHAFT *e.g.* freind *freind*, freindſhaft *freind-ſhip*; geſell *companion*, geſellſhaft *company*;

jungfr. we *maid*, jungfrauſhaft *maydenhead*; bruder *brother*, bruderſhaft *brotherhood &c.*

TUM *e.g.* fürſtentum *princedome*, chriſten -tum *chriſtendome*; kæiſertum *empire*, biſtum *or* biſhofftum *biſhoprick &c.*

EI *or* EYE *and* (*but ſeldome*) DEI *or* DEYE *e.g.* praler *boaſter*, pralerei *or* pral -ereye *boaſting*; reiter *horſeman*, reiterei *horſemanſhip or chevalrie*; ſpœtter *mocker*, ſpœtterei *mockery*; narr *fool*, narredei *or* narredeye *jolly or fooliſhnes &c.*

ER *and* ERIN *e. g.* Engelland *England*, Engellæ der *Engliſhman*, Engellænderin *Eng -liſh woman*; London *London*, Londner *Londener*, Londnerin *a woman from London*; Danzig, Danziger, Danzigerin, *and ſo forth allmoſt all patronymicks. from thence are alſo derived adjectivs in* ISH, *uſed commonly of irrationall and ſenceleſs things, as the Latin adjectivs in* ICUS *e.g.* Spanien *Spain*, ſpanier *Spaniard*, Spaniſher wein *Spaniſh wine*, vinum Hiſpanicum; Indien *Indie*, Indier *or* Indianer *Indian*, Indiſhe *or* Indianiſhe gewürze *ſpices brought from the Indies*, aromata Indica *&c. of the termination* INN *of the femirins, and* GEN *(in lieu of* LE *or* LEIN*) of the diminutivs, ſee in the doctrin of moveable and diminutiv ſubſtantivs P. II. chap. I. ſect. 1. n. 2. and chap. 2. ſect. 2. about the end. but the terminations* E, DE, TE, EL, ER, FT, LING, NIS, SAL, ST, T, UNG, *are added to verbes, to make them ſubſtantivs, after we have firſt taken away the termination* EN *of the infinitiv, as*

E, DE, TE, *e. g.* liben *to love*, di libe *love*; be-gere *to desire*, begire *or* begirde *desire*; ziren *embellish*, zire *or* zirde *embellishment*; geloben *to vowe*, eine gelübde *a vow*; verlobben *to promise*, ein verlobter *or* eine verlobte *a bethroted*, eine verlœbte verlœbnis *or* verlobung *a promise of marriage*; sih frewen *to rejoice*, freude *joy &c.*

EL *e. g.* fligen *to fly*, ein fligel *a wing*; stœkken *to put in*, ein stükkel *or* stihel *an iron-crotw*; winden *to wind or wrap up*, eine windel *a clout or swadling*; spinnen *to spinne*, eine spinnel *or* spindel *a spindle.*

ER, UNG *e. g.* erretten *or* erlœsen *to release or redeeme*, erretter *or* erlœser *releaser or redeemer*, di errettung *or* erlœsung *the release or redemtion*; versuhen *to temt*, ein versuher *a temter*, versuhung *temtation &c.*

FT *e. g.* ankommen *to come nigh*, ankunft *or of old* ankumft *coming nigh or advent*; zusammen-kommen *to come together*, eine zunft *or* zumft *society or company*; vernemen *to perceive*, di vernunft *or* vernumft *the reason &c.*

LING *e. g.* sterben *to dye*, ein sterbling *a starveling or carrion*; finden *to finde*, ein findling *a child that is found or a findling*, sæugen *to give suck*, ein sæugling *a suckling*, müden *to hire*, ein müdling *a hireling &c.* so of *the nouns* di lære *doctrine*, ein lærling *a disciple or apprentice*; eine kammer *a chamber*, ein kæmmerling *a chamberlain*; lib *dear*, ein libling *a dareling*; hanf *or* hamf *hemp*, ein hænfling *a linnet*; hof *court*, hœfling

courtier; jung *young*, jůngling *youngman or youngling &c.*

SAL *e. g.* irren *to erre*, irrsal *errour*; dringen *and* trůben *to throng and disturb*, drangsal *and* trůbsal *vexation and disturbance*; labben *to comfort*, labsal *comfort &c.*

ST *e. g.* dinen *to serve*, dinst *service*; gewinnen *to winne*, gewinst *gain*; kœnnen *or* kůnnen *to can or know*, konst *or* kunst *art*; brœnnen *to burne*, bronst *heat*; gœnnen *or* gůnnen *to favour*, gonst *or* gunst *favour &c.*

T *e. g.* faren *or* fůren *to carry*, eine fart *or* furt *carriage or load*; gebæren *to bring forth*, di geburt *birth &c.*

likewise of the cardinall number is derived the ordinall with their adverbes e. g. ein *one*, erst *first*; erstlih erstlihen erstens zu'm (zu dem) ersten *or* vor's (vor das) erste *first or as the first*; zwei *two*, zweide *or* andere *second*; zweidens vor's zweide *or* zu'm zweiden *secondly*; drei *three*, dritte *third*; drittens vor's dritte *or* zu'm dritten *thirdly &c. but the other adverbs in all their degrees either keep the termination of the adjective e. g.* sahte *or* sanfte *soft and softly*, sahter *or* sæhter sanfter *or* sænfter *softer or more softly*; a'm *or* zu'm sahtesten *or* sæhtesten sanftesten *or* senftesten *most softly*; fleisig *industrious and industriously*, fleisiger *more industrious and more industriously*; a'm *or* zu'm fleisigsten *or* fleisigste *most industrious or very industriously &c.* gut *good has* wol *well*, besser *better*, bestens a'm *or* zum bestens aufs beste *best or very well. or they (the adverbs, especially being substan-*

tivs or participles) receive the termination either LIHEN *or* LIH *in the poſitiv, to which later is added in the comparativ* ER, *and in the ſuperlativ* STEN *preceded by the particle* a'm *or* zu'm; *or* STE *preceded by* auf's *or* auf d s *e.g.* er rihtet (weiſe, weislih *or*) weislihen *he judgeth wiſely*, weiſer *or* weiſlih-er *more wiſely*, auf's weiſlihſte zu'm *or* a'm weislihſten *moſt or very wiſely.* er tate es (wiſsend, wiſsendlih *or* wiſsendlihen *he did it wittingly*, zeitlih *or*) zeitlihen *timely*, ſtündlih *or* ſtündlihen *hourly*, tæglih *or* tæglihen *dayly*, jærlih *or* jærlihen *yearly*, veræhtlih *or* veræhtlihen *ſcornfully &c. to the adverbs either poſitiv, or ſuperlativ in* EN *we adde ſometimes an* S, *and then here in the ſuperlativ thoſe prepoſitiv particles* a'm, zu'm *&c. are left out e. g.* eilends *quickly*, augenblikks *in a moment*, links *or* rehts *with the left or right hand*, ſhœnſtens *very fairly*, weiſeſtens *moſt weiſely &c. the poſitiv adverbs are alſo made either by foreſetting, to the abſolute of the Patronymicks, the particle* auf, *or by adding to thoſe that ſignify any other quality, the word* weiſe *e. g.* auf Teutſh, auf Engliſh, auf Spaniſh *&c. after the Dutch, Engliſh, Spaniſh faſhion*; erliher weiſe *or* redliher weiſe *honeſtly. the reſt of this Etymologie is made clear in the declenſions of nouns and verbes, where the words of the firſt caſe and perſon are the roots, from whence all the others came.*

Sect. 2. of the Forein Derivation.

there is an abundance of Highdutch and Eng-

liſh words, which both in writing and pronouncing are either the ſame or very like, as you may well gueſse at thoſe not few examples cited but accidentaly here in this ſmall treatice; but the revolution of time and diverſity of dialects have changed the manner both of pronouncing and of ſpelling in a good many words here omitted. this mutation muſt needs be done by antiſtæchon and the other grammar-figurs, as we ſhall endeavour to make appeare.

proſthesis: eine hore *or* hure *a whore*, ir *to her*, erſt *firſt*, oben *above*, band *riband*, eine kelle *a ſkellet or ſkillet*, der rom *or* ræm von der milh *cream*, krazen *to ſcratche*, niſen *to ſneeſe*, krabbeln *to ſcrabble*, nagen *to gnawe*, ein ram *or* ramen *a frame*.

aphaeresis: ein klomp *or* klompen *a lump*, eine kwelle *a welle*, geſlank *lank*, gelükk *luck*, kneipen *to nippe*, erkwikken *to quicken*, ſchnattern *now* ſnattern *to chatter*, ſmelzen *to melt*, gewinnen *to winne*, gelibt *loved*, *and thus* GE *of the participles is alwayes taken away, which is to be obſerved alſo of all the other nouns beginning with the ſaid ſyllable e.g.* gereht *right*, geſiht *ſight*, geſund *ſound*, gedanken *thoughts &c.* genug *has enough*.

epenthesis: der donner *the thunder*, ſi *ſhee*, ſiſe *or* ſis *ſweet*, *Belg.* ſoet; handtwelle *handtowell*, wildniſs *wilderneſs*, glaſer *glaſier*.

ſyncope: ein hügel *a hill*, übel *evel or ill*, oder *or*, niht *not*, uns *us*, wünſhen *or* wündſhen *to wiſhe*, welh *which*, ſolh *ſuch*, ſweſter *ſiſter*, unſer *our*, als *as*, mærgel *marle*, ſanft *ſoft &c.*

paragoga: lenen *or* leyen *to lende*, inn *in*, kern *kernell*, eine bürde *a burden*, ein helm *a helmet*, dapfer *dapper or pert*.

apocope: eine ſünde *a ſin*, der ſafn *thaſe*, ih *i*; wir *we*, ein prilten *a prieſt*, eine hine *a bee*, ilh *it*, ein kan *canaru or boat*.

metathesis: topf *or* top *pot*, eine butte *a tub*, ein ros *a horſe*, eine bürſte *a brush*, brennen *or* broennen *to burne*, forht *fright*, ein bred *a board*, der kolb *or* kolben *the club*, von *Belg.* van *qs.* fon *and* fan *Engl. oft &c. which is done conſtantly in theſe words that ende in* LE, NE, RE, *e. g.* ein kohlæffel *a ladle*, ein girtel *a girdle*, eine nenadel *a needle*, ſhewern *to ſhowre*, feyer *or* feir *fire*, angel *angle*, geſtolen *ſtolne*.

and though a certain rule or ſtanding certainty can not be preſcribed (as we could wiſh it were) thorough the whole language without inſtances and exceptions; nevertheleſs we are ſure, that it will helpe us much, when we knowe by theſe meanes, how either a German may very eaſily turn the Engliſh, or an Engliſhman the High-dutch words into his own, and thus in half an hours time get by heart a greater ſtore of them than he is able to reade over ſcarce in half a day; which ſeeming hyperbole will ſoon evaniſh in the metamorphoſis here following, where to Engliſh the High-dutch words, we have to change their

A, *and* O, *both long*; *likewiſe* Æ, *into* EA, *e. g.* ein jar *a year*, klar *clear*, nae *neer*, bard *beard*, befaren *to feare*, ja *yea*, mal *or* mal *meal*, læger *or* läger *leaguer*, lærn-

en *to learne*, ein bær *or* ber *a bear*, ædel *eathle or ethle*, ſtrom *ſtream*, an ſtatt *or* in ſtæde *in stead*, eine bone *a bean*, rot *redd*, trat *thread*, or *ear*, brot *bread*, der Oſt *the Eaſt*, Oſtwind *Eaſt-wind*, Oſtern *Eaſter*.

Æ *into* A *e. g.* bekker *baker*, hætte *hatt*, æpfel *apples*, gærtener *gardener*, ſtærke *ſtarch*, tære *tar*, wæſpe *waſpe*, ſhu-kniſt *ſhoe-laſt*, um hænge *hangings &c.*

A *ſhort into* O *and* E *e. g.* belangen *to belong*, lang *long*, geſang *ſong*, mang *among*, gedrang *throng*, gaſt *gueſt*, raſt *reſt*, halten *to holde*, harſh *or* hæſſher *hoarſh*.

AU *and* ÆU *into* EA EW *or* OU *e. g.* hæupt *or* haupt *head*, kaufen *to cheapen*, draumen *or* dræumen *to dreame*, haufen *or* hæufen *to heape*, laufen *to leape*, raufen *or* ræufen *to reape*, der ſaum *the ſeam*, taub *deaf*, der baum eines wæbers *the beam of a weaver*, berauben *to bereave*, ſhawen *to ſhowe or ſhewe*, ſnauze *ſnout*, ſhaurih *ſhowry*, ſlau *or* wizig *ſlow or wittie*, untertaugen *to tugge down*, blawe *blew*, hawen *to hewe*, der dau *the dew*, es dawet *it thaws*, ſawer *ſower*, eine laus *a louſe*, eine maus *a mouſe*, das haus *the houſe*, laut *loud*, das maul *the mouth*, maulworf *molewarp*, maulbere *mulberrie*, eine ſawe *a ſow*, brawen *or* bræwen *to brewe*, mæyen *or* mæen *to mowe*, hæulen *to howle*, aus *out*, faul *foul &c.* *but ſometimes into* U O *or* OO *e. g.* der ſhaum *the ſcum*, ſhaumen *or* ſhæumen *to ſcumme*, eine pflaume *a plum*, ſaulen *to ſucke*, ſaufen *to ſuppe*, der daum *or* daumen *the thumb*, eine

daube *a dove*, ein laub brotes *a loaf of bread*, ein rauber *a robber*, ein raum *a room*, auf *up*, ſauhen *to ſucke or ſoake &c.*

B *finall or ſtanding before an* F, *in the ſingular nouns commonly into* F, *but in their plurals and elſewhere into* V *e. g.* ein dib *a thief*, dibe *thieves*, kalb *calf*, kælber *calves*, ein weib *a wife*, weiber *wives*, ein ſhaub *a ſheaf* das leben *the life*, zu leben *to live*, leblih *lively*, ſtab *ſtaff*, ob *if*, halb *half*, ab *of*, ſelb *or* ſelbſt *ſelf or ſelfs*, ſtreifen ſtræben *or* ſtreiben *to ſtrife*, ſiben *to ſift*, ſib *ſive*, eine ſalbe *a ſalve*, ſtube *ſtew or ſtove*, ſterb-en *to ſtarve*, treiben *to drive*, di leber *the liver*, der rab *the raven*, hærbeſt *harveſt*, der abend *the avond or evening*, ûbel *evel*, wæben *to weave*, ſhaben *to ſhave*, geben *to give*, haben *to have*, liben *to love*, ûber *over*; grab *grave*, graben *to grave or carve*, nabel *navel*, ſibene *ſeven*, eben *even*, heben *or* hœben *to heave*, ſwer zu hœben *heavie*, nabe *nave of a cartwheel &c. ſee P.*

CH *after a conſonant and before a vowel in the ſame ſyllable into* H, *but between two conſonants of one ſyllable it is quite taken away both here in our dialect and in the Engliſh e. g.* aſche *now* aſhe *aſhe*, raſch *now* raſh *raſh*, ſhroten *to ſhred*, ſhrœt *or* krumm *ſhrewd*, ſlabbern *or* ſlappern *to ſlabber*, ſlitten *ſledge*, inn ſhifer zerſplittern *to ſhiver into ſplinters or ſplinters*, ſnæppiſh *or* ſnippiſh *ſnappiſh*, puſhen *to puſhe*, ſhrein *ſhrine or ſcrine*, ſwærm-en *to ſwarme. but the Engliſh like the Italians and Spaniards doe turne it, ſometimes*

to C *or* K *e. g.* ſharmezel *or* ſharmůzel *ſkirmiſh, It. and Hiſp. ſcaramuccia*; ein buſh *a buſh, It. and Hiſp. boſco, whence an ambuſh, Gall. embuſcade, It. and Hiſp. emboſcada*; ein wiſh *a wiſk*, ſhelten *to ſcolde*, ſhanze *ſcaunce or ſconce*, ſhrapen *to ſcrape*, eine ſhůppe *a ſcoop*, ſhoſsfrei *ſcotfree*, ſhreiber *ſcrivener*, ſhalen einer wage, eines fiſhes *or* haupts *ſcales of a ballance, fiſh or head*; haſel- nuſs - ſhale *haſsel-nut - ſhell or ſhale. ſee the lett.* H *ſect. 3. chap. 1. Part. 1. and lett.* S. *of this ſect.*

D *into* TH *e. g.* ding *thing*, mih důnket *me thinketh*, denken *to thinke*, der *or* di *the*, dis *or* das *this or that*, durh *thorough*, der mund *the mouth*, dann *or* denn *than or then*, der tod *the death*, bruder *brother*, pfad *path*, baden *to bathe*, das bad *the bath*, eine ſwade gras *a ſwath of graſs*, Nord *North*, leder *leather*, ander *other*, dritte *third*, beide *both*, eine ſheide *a ſheath*, dinne *thinn*, dikk *thick*, eine heide *a heath*, ein heid *a heathen*, dar *there*, weder *whether*, dreye *three*, dorn *thorn*, doh *though*, danken *to thanke*, ein eid *an oath*, du *thou*, dein *thine*, dorſt *thirſt*, dœrſtig *thirſty*. *&c.*

E *long*, Æ *and* EI *often into* EA *and* EE *e. g.* heilen *to heale*, feyer-herd *fire-hearth*, eine herde *a heard*, leder *leather*, ſtelen *to ſteale*, feder *feather*, di ſee *the ſea*, ſeen *or better* ſæen *to ſee*, ſæen *or better* ſeen *to ſowe*, ſteiren *to ſteere*, ſteyermann *ſteerman*, treden *or* træden *to treade*, das wetter *or* wætter *the weather*, das mel *the meal*, ærde *or* erde *earth*,

leiten *to leade*, ſpreiten *to ſpreade*, heizen *to heate*, teir *or* deyer *dear*, teil *or* deil *deal*. *but ſometimes eſpecially* EI *into* O, OA *or* AI *e.g.* ſeife *ſope*, geiſt *ghoſt*, meiſt *moſt*, mer *more*, ſer *ſore*, greinen *to grone or groane*, alleine *alone*, das werk *the work*, geis *goat*, bein *bone*, heis *hot*, ein *one*, einſt *or* eins *once*, eid *oath*, ſtein *ſtone*, ein ſtreih *or* ſtrih *a ſtreak or ſtroak*, ſwerd *ſword*, heim *home*, nein *no*, kein *none*, preiſen *or* præiſen *to praiſe*, regen *rain*, ſtreyen *or* ſtræyen *to ſtraye &c. and oftentimes into* I, *e.g.* mein *mine*, dein *thine*, pfeife *pipe*, neine *nine*, fein *fine*, wein *wine*, ſweine *ſwine*, ſheinen *to ſhine*, eitel *idle*, eiland *ile*, ſleim *ſlime*, meile *mile*, eiſen *iron*, lein *line*, leim *lime*, kneif *knife*, feile *file*, feilen *to file*, leiht *light &c. but* I *or* EI *finall or* EY *into* Y *or* IE *e.g.* eine ſwein-ſteye *ſwineſtie*, ſhreyen *to crye*, wi *why*, zweiliht *twielight*, bei *by*, paſtei *or* paſteye *paſtie &c.*

E *eſpecially the ſhort before* B, KK, NK, X, *into* I *and* A *e.g.* lekken *to licke*, ſtekken *to ſticke*, denken *to thinke*, bedenken *to bethinke*, beſprenkeln *to beſprinkle*, reht *right*, melken *to milke*, niſten *to neſte*, leben *to live*, geben *to give*, ſex *or* ſehſe *ſix*, peh *pick*, ſtern *ſtarr*, hellebarte *halbert*, ferne *farr*, feſt *faſt*, meſſe *muſs*, eſel *aſs*, ſtandfeſt *ſtedfaſt*. *but the finall* E *into* OW *or* EW *e.g.* der ſne *the ſnow*, kroeen *to crowe*, kue *cow*, ſæen *to ſowe*, eine reye *or* reie *row*, kiæ: *a crow*, dreen *or* werfen *to throwe*, bleen blæen or blaſen *to blowe*, nun *(of old*

nue) *new*, wi (*else* wie) *how or why*, ſene *ſinew*, trewe *true and truth*.

I *long commonly into* EE *and ſometimes into* E, EA *or* IE, *e.g.* hir *hier here or heer*; bir *bier or beer*, kni *knee*, di *the*, dif *deep*, ſiden *to ſeethe*, ein rim *or* rimen (ſeife *i. ſope*) *a ream* (*of paper i.* ris papir,) ſigeln *to ſeale*, ſigelring *ſealring*, ſibene *ſeven*, eilfe *now* elfe *eleven*, ſhild *ſhield*, wir *we*, nitlih *neatly*, dir *to thee &c.*

F *in the midſt or end of a word into* P, *the which is omitted, if an other* P *precede*, e. g. ein ſhaf *a ſheap*, ein ſhif *a ſhip*, ſeife *ſope*; hoffen *to hope*, raufen *to reape*, eine pfeife *a pipe*, ein aff *an ape*, ein pfaff (*excellently and eminently*) *a pope*, der pfad *the path*, ein tropf *or* tropfen *a drop*, ſlüpfen *or* ſlüppen *to ſlippe*, ſlipferih *ſlippery*, pfoſten *poſts*, pfund *pound*, fuſsta pf *footſtep*, pfennig *penny*, trumpf *trumpcard*, apfel *apple*, helfen *to helpe*, verpfænden *to pawne*, ein pfand *a pawn*, di hülfe *the help*, pflaſter *plaiſter and plaſter*, eine pflanze *a plant*, pflanzen *to plante*, ein dorf *a dorp*, waffen *weapon*, pfeffer *pepper*, reif *ripe*, kupfer *copper*, ein küfer *or* bœtteriger *a cooper*, offen *open*, gaffen *to gape*, eine fleiſe *a fleev*, hopfen *hop or hoppes*, gras-hüpfer *graſshopper*, knitten *or* knüpfen *to knitte*, pfipfen *or* pipen als ein vogel *to peepe as a bird*, rumpf *or* rumf *rump*. ſhaffen *or* ſhœpfen *to ſhape*, ſtampfen *to ſtampe*, ſtopfen *to ſtoppe or ſtuffe*, ſtrumpf *ſtrump*, harfe *harpe*, krampf *the kramp or cramp*; knopf *knop*, pfalz-grav *palz-grave*, pflug *plough*, ſharf *ſharp*, eine ſnepfe *a ſnip*, der zapfen

the tap, wein-zæpfer *wine-tapper*, ſlafen *to ſleepe*, pflokken *to plucke*, ein pfil *a pillow*, pfau *peacock*. *ſee the letter* V.

G *in the beginning of the preformativ ſyll.* GE *is quite taken away with its vowell, and in the middle it is changed into* Y *or* I *e. g.* eine magt *a mayd or maid*, gegen-geſagt *gain-ſayd or ſaid*, hagel *hailſtone*, *the Low-ſax-onick* brægen *or* gehirn *brains*, geſlagen *ſlay'n or ſlain*, ein nagel *a nayl*, ein flægel *a flayl or flail*, ſegel *ſayl or ſail*, *our word* ei *or* æi *and the Nederlandiſh* ey *from the Angle-Saxonick* æg, *Engl. egg. but in the end or before an* E *into* Y *or* IE *e. g.* honig *honny*, ein aug *an eye*, der weg *the way*, ſagen *to ſay*, tod ſlagen *to ſlay*, mœgen *may*, ligen *to lay*, lügen *to lye*, heilig *holy*, gœttlih *godly*, zwanzig *twentie or twenty*, *and ſo forth through all the adjectivs and adverbs of this termination, notwithſtanding it be ſpelled by ſome with an* H *e. g.* kœniglih *kingly*, herzlih *heartly*, bitterlih *bitterly &c. and elſewhere eſpecially after an* L *or* R *into* OW *e. g.* di ſorge *the ſorrow*, ſorgen *to ſorrowe*, borgen *to borrowe*, eine forge *or* furge *a furrow*, ein vogel *a fowle*, morgen *to morrow*, tallig *tallow*, folgen *to followe*, ſwælgen *to ſwallowe*, galgen *gallow*, eigen *owne*, gelbe *yellow*, ellbogen *ellbow*, bœgen *to bowe*, ein bogen *a bow*, ein hargen *a harrow*, eine ſæge *a ſaw*, magen *maw &c.*

H *the mute and needleſs aſpiration uſed by ſome after an other letter of the ſame ſyllable is alwayes ſyncopized as well here by us as in Engliſh, and*

that often not without mutation of the foregoing letters e.g. eine kuhe *now* kue *a cow*, ſtroh *now* ſtro *ſtraw*; ein ſhuh *now* ſhu *a ſhoe*, eine ſchlœhe *or* ſchleh *now* ſlœe *or* ſlee *a ſloe*, nahe *or* nae *nigh or near*, krœhen *now* krœ-en wi ein han *to crowe like a cock*, rohe *now* roe *raw*, gehen *now* geen *to goe*, ſtehen *now* ſteen *to ſtand*, ſtehen machen *now* ſteen mahen *to ſtaye*, wœhe *or* wœh *now* wœe *or* wœ *woe*, zweihe *now* zweye *or* zwei *two*, fliehen *now* flien *to flie &c. ſee the lett.*

E *and* T.

H *the hard aſpiration uſed now by us for* CH, *in the middle or end of a ſyllable, ſometimes into* GH *e.g.* leiht *and* das liht *light*, reht *right*, gewiht *weight*, naht *night*, lahen *to laughe*, tohter *daughter*, di maht *the might*, mæhtig *mightie*, durh *thorough*, rauh *rough*, hœe *or* hœhte *hight*, gebraht *brought*, dreihte *drought*, gedaht *thought*, ahte *eight*, kneht *knight*, fehten *to fighte*, hoh *high*, doh *though*, fluht *flight*, ihtwas *ought*, nihts *nought*, nahbar *neighbour*, ſlaht-haus *ſlaughter-houſe*, di pflihte *the plight*, keihen *or* huſten *to coughe*, ſleht *ſlight &c. and ſometimes eſpecialy in the end of a ſyllable into* K *or* CK *e.g.* ein buh *a book*, eine wohe *a week*, ſik *or* ſih *ſick*, der lauh *the leek*, ſuhen *to ſeeke*, eine eihe *an oak*, brauhen *to brooke*, mahen *to make*, weih *weak*, gleih *like*, horh-en *to hearken*. ſprehen *or* ſpræhen *to ſpeake*, eine ſahe *a ſake*, eine ſe-lahe *a lake*, ein koh *a kook*, ein kuhen *a cake*, rehenen *to reckon*, rehnung *reckoning*, ein werk (*or*

werh) *a work*, eine hehel *a heckle or hirchel*, ein ſtorh *a ſtork*, brehen *to breake*, ein mœnh *a monk*, eine ſihel *a ſickle*, ein kůhlein *or* junges hůngen *a chickin* milh *milk*, krahen i' m brehen *to cracke*, ein knœhel *a knuckle*, eine lærhe *a lark*, eine ſpeihe des rades *a ſpoke of the wheel*, tegel ſtreihen *to ſtrike ſails*, ein beher *a beaker*, *Belg.* een beker *or* beecker, *Ital.* un bicchiere; růhen *or* růhen *to reeke or ſmelle*, ein deih *a dike or ditch*, ſtreihen *to ſtroke and ſtrike &c. but often eſpecialy after an* L *(the which moſt commonly is left out in Engliſh) into* CH, *to which (being pronounced as* TSH*) the letter* T *is often added e.g.* di kůrhe *the church*, reih *rich*, erſuhen *to beſeeche*, reihen *to reathe*, predihen *to preuche*, ein bruh *a breach*, ſolh *ſuch*, welh *which*, ſprahe *ſpeech*, jaht-ſhiff *yatch a ſort of ſhips*, krůhen *to crouche*, di kůhe *the kitchin*, wahen *to watche*, das dah *the datch*, ein ſtih *a ſtich*, ſtrekken *to ſtretche*, krůkken *crutches*, peh *pitch*, panſh *or* pantſh *panch &c. ſee the letter* K.

J *conſonant and initiall into* Y *e.g.* jar *year*, joſh *yoak*, jung *young*, jugend *youth*, garn *or* jarn *yarne*, geſtern *or* jeſtern *yeſter*, gerte *or* jerte *garth and yard*, jænen *or* gœnen *to yawne*, ja *yes or yea &c.*

K *before* A, O, U, K, L, R, *into* C, *e.g.* eine kanne *a canne*, ih kann *i can*, kommen *to come*, klawe *clawe*, kůle *cool*, ein kalb *a calf*, klokke *clock*, akker *acre*, ankel *ancle*, kirſhe *cherrie*, nakken *neck*, das korn *the corn*, di krone *the crown*, krihen

to creepe, klœben *to cleave*, klinge *to clinge*, pakke auf deinen pakk *pack up thy pack*, ſprekkel *ſpeckle*, kutſche *coach*, di koſte *coſt*, kalk *or* kalh *chalk*, kammer *chamber*, klimm-en *to climme*, ein kukku *a cuckow*, kole *cole*, kol *colwort*, pikken *to pick*, pikkel *pickle &c.* *but ſometimes*, *eſpecialy before* E *or* I *into* CH, *e. g.* kind *child*, kinn *chinn*, fink *or* finken *finch*, kiſte *cheſt*, kirhe *church*, kæs *cheeſe*, kæwen *to chewe*, kiſen *or* kûſen *to choſe*, kaſtanien-nuſs *cheſs-nut*, kaufen *Belg.* koopen *to cheapen*; kœpfen *or* kûppen, *to chop*, *Belg.* kappen *&c.*

KK *into* CK, GG *or* DG *e. g.* wakkeln *or* waggeln *to wagge*, ein ſlukker *a ſluggard*, ſhoggeln *or* ſhukkeln *to ſhogge*, brikke *or* brûkke *brigg or bridge*, hekke *hegg or hedge*, rokken *or* korn *rogge or rye*, rokk *i. tunica*, *rugg i. ſtragulum hirſutum*; ſakk *ſack or bagg*, ſtekken *a ſtick or to ſtick*, ſokke *ſock &c.*

L *in the midſt of a ſyllable*, *after the Hollandiſh and French faſhion*, *either in writing or at leaſt in pronouncing into* U *e. g.* ſtolz *i. proud*, *ſtout i.* dapfer; wald *wood*, ſalz *ſalt*, *Belg. and Gall.* ſout; kalb *calf qs. cauf*. ſolte wolte *ſhould would qs. ſhoud woud &c.*

M *in the beginning*, *but ſeldome*, *into* W *or* WH *e.g.* wærmut *wormwood*, mit *with*, das menſh (*an unmarried woman*) *the whench*. *but elſewhere eſpecially after an other* M, *into* B *uſed before alſo by us in ſome words e. g.* ſlummern *or* ſlumbern *to ſlumbere* grummeln *or* murren *to grumble*, krûmeln *to crumble or crume*, ein kamm *or* kamb *a comb*, kæmmen

to combe, ein lamm *or* lamb *a lamb*, der daum -en *the thumb*, marmel *marble*, taumeln *to tumble*, mummeln *or* mumbeln *to mumble*, ein bramber-ſtrauh *a bramble*, ſtummeln *or* ſtumbeln *to ſtumble*, ein ſhæmel ſhæmmel *or* ſhæmbel *i. a low ſtool, ſhambles i. places where meat is ſold upon*; ſtumm *or* ſtumb *dumb*.

N *finall of the infinit and definit moods is taken away leaving behind its vowell as the characteriſtick letter, whereby the better to ſhow as well Harmony and Derivation as the Difference betwixt a noun and a verbe. ſee the foregoing chapter.*

O *ſhort into* U *or* OO, *e. g.* torf *turf*, koh *cook*, ſommer *ſummer*, wolle *wool*, wolf *wulf*, ſonne *ſunne*, blutt *blood*, tonne *tunn*, mond *moon*, nonne *nunne*, ſtottern *ſtutter*.

œ *and* ů *into* A, I, O, U, EE, *or (but ſeldom)* EO *and* EA *e. g.* wůſte *waſt*, verwůſten *to waſte*, kœnig *king*, ſœne *ſons or ſonnes*, brœnnen *to burne*, kůn *keen*, rœſten *or* roſten *to roſte*. grůſsen *to greete*, ůber *over*, Rœmiſh *Romiſh*, kůſsen *to kiſse*, ein kůſsen *a cuſhion*, fœrdern *or of old* fůrdern *to further*, frœlih *frolick*, kůl *cool*, plůndern *to plunder*, hœlle *helle*, hœle *hole*, hœren *to heare*, der pœbel *the people or rabble*, ſtœren *to ſtirre*, ſtœrmen *or* ſtůrmen *to ſtorme*, ein ſtůkk lakrœzen *a ſtick of liquoris*, imann *or* jemann *yeoman. &c. ſee the lett.* U

P *into* B, *as this into* P, *both ſeldom e. g.* rum -peln *to rumble*, palm-baum *balm-tree*, plapp -ern *to blabber*, lumpen *lumber*, ſtupfel *ſtubble*, hůppeln *or* hůpfeln *to hobble*, di bangig-

keiten *the pangues*, boren *to bore pore or poare*, eine birn *a pear*, pralen *to brawle*.

KW *into* QU *e.g.* kwitte *quince*, kwitt *quit*, kwellen *to quelle &c.*

both S *and* Z *commonly ſhort and finall, as alſo* Z *initiall into* T, *e.g.* was iſt das? *what is that?* waſser *water*, haſsen *to hate*, laſsen *to let*, ſezen *to ſet*, ſizen *to ſit*, kaze *cat*, ſtelzen *ſtilts*, ſwarz *ſwart or black*, zweig *twig*, zam *tame*, erzælen *and* zælen *to telle*, das geringſte zin *or* bleh *tinn*, zu ſmelzen *to melte*, filz *filt*, zunge *toung*, zangen *tonges*, herz *heart*, malz *malt*, ſalz *ſalt*, milz *milt*, eine zære *a tear*, zerren *to teare*, ſweis *ſweat*, ſwizen *to ſweate*, eſsen *to eate*, vergeſsen *to forgette*, ſtraſe *ſtreet*, münze *mint*, der ſpis *the ſpit*, eine nuſs *a nut*, zwillinge *twinnes*, weis *white*, zunder *tinder*, ein winzer *a vintener*, ein ſchuſs *a ſhot*, ſchüſsen *to ſhoote*, heis *hot*, hize *heat*, zan *tooth*, nez *net*, neſsel *nettle*, wezen *to whette*, zwinkeln mit den augen *to twincle with the eyes*, beze *bitch*, zigel *tile*, zimmer-holz *timber*, ein ganſer *a gander*, der lenz *the lent*, zuzien *to tie*, beſser *better*, das los *the lot*, erd-klos *clod of earth*, der zoll *the toll*, beiſen *to bite*, zæe *tough*, eine fus-zœe *a foot-toe*, ſtrozen *to ſtrutte*, der ziz *or* di wærze einer bruſt *the teat or wart of a breaſt*, zeitung *tiding*, zeit *tide and time*. keſsel *kettle*. *but* S *long and finall into* C *or* Z *e.g.* friſen *to freeze*, eis *ice*, reis *rice*, preis *price or prize*, ein zirkel *a circle*, prinz *prince*, plaz *place*, zepter *ſcepter*, læuſe *lice*, unzimlih *unſeemly*, glans *or* glanz *glance*

Belg. glants; glæntſen *or* glænzen glæntzem glinzern *or* gleiſen *to gliſter*, *Belg.* glantſen, *Dan.* glantzer.

SCH *finall (uſed by others hitherto) alwayes into* SH *which old ſpelling of the Saxons, ſtill kept up in Engliſh, we alſo embrace here in this new method of ours e. g.* ein fiſh *a fiſh*, fiſhen *to fiſhe*, ein biſhoff *a biſhop*, friſh *freſh*, erfriſhen *to refreſhe*, waſhen *to waſhe &c. but the initial eſpecially before* L, M, N, R, W, *into* S, *e. g.* ſleht halten *to ſligbte*, ſlukkiſh *ſluggiſh*, ſmal *ſmall*, ſmerzen *to ſmarte*, ein ſmitt *a ſmith*, ſnell *ſnell*, ſnorren *to ſnorte*, ſnuppen *to ſnuffe*, ſhrœter *ſcroter*, Swed *Swedlander*, Sweizer *Swizer*, ſwingen *to ſwinge*, ſmeitig *or* geſmeitig *ſmooth &c. more examples ſee in the firſt chapt. of the firſt part at the 3. ſect. and lett.* CH *of this ſect.*

HS *into* X, *e. g.* ein fuhs *a fox*, der flahs *flax*, das wahs *wax*, der ohs *ox*, wahſen *to waxe*, eine bihſe *a box*, ſehſe *ſix*, ſehzig, *ſixty*, ſehzehn *ſixteen*; di ahſel *the axell*; næhſt *next*; zwiſchen *betwixt*; Sahſen *Saxony*; ein Sahs *a Saxon*, ahſel *or* axel *axle*.

T *of the nouns and particles often, but in the Imperfects and in the participle paſsiv alwayes, into* D, *e. g.* wittwe *widdow*, ſhatten *ſhaddow*, überſhatten *overſhaddowe*, brot *bread*, matte *or* wiſe *meddow*, ku-euter *or* utter *uddet of a cow*, wittwer *widdower*, di ſhulter *the ſhoulder*, blut *blood*, trummel *drum*, treige *dry*, garten *garden*, ſattel *ſaddle*, futter *fudder or food*, dritte *third*, flut *flood*, haupt *head*, hæt- lang *head-long*, der tod *death*, leiten

to leade, mittag *midday*, wort *word*, di Gottheit *the Godhead*, hart *hard*, alt *old*, weit *wide*, bitten *i. beseeche*, *to bidde i. commande*; bett *bed*, mittel *middle*, blat *blad*, blatter *or* blase *bladder*, trinken *to drinke*, toll *dull*, teufel *devil*, gut *good*, eine leiter *a ladder*, ein rætzel *or* rætsel *riddle*, unter *under*. *see the preced. chapt. and sometimes into* TH, *both in nouns and particles e. g.* monat *moneth*, motte *moth*, streng'e *strength*, vater *father*, mutter *mother*, trad *thread*, latte *lath*, wærme *or* warmte *warmth*, troen *or* treyen *to threaten*, wetter *weather*, mit *with*, sint *or* sit *sith &c. but in the third present singular of the rest alwayes into* TH *or* S, *the which is quite taken away in the second plurall of both the single tenses, whereof see the foregoth*, TH *used by others into* D *e. g.* thuen *to doe*; eine that *a deed*; theier *dear*, eine thüre *or* ein thor *a dore*; roth *redd*, rœthlich *reddish*; eine ruthe *a rod*, ein theil *a deal*; mœrterer *murderer*, mort *murder*, ermotthen *or* mœrthern *to murder*, theilen *to deale*; ein thal *a dale*, thumb *dome*; herzogthum *duke-dome &c. our method has either* T *or* D *e. g.* das dor *dore*; rot *redd*, tuen *to doe &c.* U *and* ü *into* EE, *or* I, *e. g.* fülen *to feele*; suhen *to seeke*; bluten *to bleede*; grün *green*; eine buhe *a beech*; süsse *sweet Belg.* soet; ein kuss *a kiss*; küssen *to kisse*; mih dünkt *me thinks*, dürsten *and* durst *en to thirst*, der durst *the thirst*. *but sometimes* U *especially being long*, *into* OO *e. g.* eine blume *a bloom*, ein pful *a pool*, ein flur

floor, buh *book*, blut *blood*, der huf *hoof*, beute *booty*, bude *booth &c. and when short into* O *or* OU *e.g.* rond *or* rund *round*, hund *hound*, geſund *ſound* di zunge *tongue and (better) toung or tung*, wundern *to wonder*, wunde *wound*, durh *through*, du *thou*, daube *dove &c. but our dialect in common'y the ſame vowel* O *e. g.* moſs *or* mos *moſs*, dorh *thorough*, gold *gould or gold*, golden *golden*, voll *full*, *ſo likewiſe* konſt *art*, omſonſt *in vain &c. elſe* mus, durh, guld, yull *or* full, kunſt, umſunſt *&c. ſee the letter* O.

V *into* F, *as that (but ſeldom) into* V *e. g.* vater *father*, vaſs *or* faſs *fat or veſſel*, vor *for*, bevor *before*, voll *full*, vire *four*, volk *folk*, vogel *fowl*, fünfe *five*, ein ofen *an oven*, prüfen *to prove. but the ſyllable* VER *is commonly left out, e. g.* verliſen *to looſe*, verdammen *to damme*, verblenden *to blende*, verhintern *to hinder*, verlæubnůſs *or* erlaubnuſs *leav*, verloren *loſt or forlorne*, ein verluſt *a loſs*, verlangen *to longe*, vermanen *to moniſhe. and theſe are changed thus*: verſteen *to underſtand*, vegeſsen *to forgette*, verlaſsen *to forſake*, vergeben *to forgive*.

W *ſometimes into* WH, *which were alſo uſed by the Angle-Saxons e. g.* wann *or* wenn *whan or when*, wer *who*, was *what*, wirbel-wind *whirle-wind*, war (*or* wo) *where*, weizen *wheat*, weiſen *to whiten*, weder *whether*, wezen *to whette*, welh *which*, eine weile *a while*, weinen *to whine*, wiſpern

to whisper, ein walfisch *a whale*, spinn-wærtel *wharle to put on a spindle*, eine radewelle *or* rade-bære *a wheel-bare*.

finaly we can not but know, that as in the High-and Low-countries both of England and Germany there be diverse provinces and shires, and consequently severall idioms and manners in the pronunciation: so tract of time hath made (and makes still) various alterations not only in writing and spelling, as we have seen just now all along; but also in the very signification, partly by taking sundrie words formerly used for the same things, either in a limited or in a quite other sense, and partly by receiving (especially in England) or making new ones. whence it comes to pass, that some of'em (as coined money) are perhaps in this part of a countrie in continuall use and wellcome, but in an other less regarded growing out as of countenance so of fashion, till we forgette them quite, as for examples fit to our purpose, the words: earle, lord, lady, to bide, to write, to spell &c. *were in the former times as well used in Saxony (from whence they came) as now in England; where as in stead thereof we use in Germany other words of the same signification:* graf, groser Herr, Frælein *or* Frægen, warten, shreiben, buhstabiren. *thus the High-dutch word* der krig *and the Netherlandish* Oorlogh *had anciently got in Germanie an other emphatick name, to wit*, wærr werre *or* warr, *signifying such an action, where upon followeth commonly a strange confusion and disorder called in our toung* eine unordent-

like verwerrung *or* ein gewerr, *the which uſualy is the cauſe, ſupport and effect of any warr, as both Low- and High-Germany (the very ſtage of Heroick actions and the muſterplace of Mars) can teſtify it abundantly not only now for its own ſelf, but hath ſhown it alſo unto others and thereby as well given to an everlaſting remembrance its notition* warre *to the Britains*; guerre *to the French*, guerra *to the Italian and Spaniſh &c. nations*; *as brought upon its poſſeſſors the glorious name* German *or* Guerman *i. warriour or man of warre, which title they firſt got from their enimies. this aboliſhing of words we could prove alſo in the Engliſh (or in any other) toung; but it will ſuffice for the preſent to tell you, that we finde in reading Engliſh books and in diſcourſing with antient people, ſeverall naturalized words now almoſt unknown to the younger ones, eſpecially in thoſe places as London is where almoſt all nations under heaven reſort and by converſing and trading mix their own with thoſe of the inhabitans, and take every foot a nativ word in a wrong ſenſe and ſignification, which then amongſt the rabble gets the upperhand in ſpite of the dictionaries and ſometimes againſt all reaſons of the learned, or their firſt inventors, as the words* knab *and* bub *i. knave and boy, have here both quite an other ſignification, then they had there; for* ein knab *is alwayes taken with us in the beſt ſenſe as the word Boy amongſt the Engliſh, on the contrary* ein bub *ſignifyeth*

usualy in our toung as much as a Knave in the Englisch, and that is always taken in the worst meaning for a base fellow or rascal. our and the Lowdutch word kneht, *Englished knight, doeth in all Germanie signify a mean he-servant, but in England it claimes at the title of no less than a noble man; the word* mag't *or* maget, *in Englisch, maid or may'd was formerly indifferent and taken as it was spoken both for a virgin and for a servant, but now it signifyeth in our toung nothing else then a poor and vile maid-servand without any addition; whereas in England it denotes (absolutly taken) a virgin, and not without a certain supposition of a byword it hath the signification of a servant.* ein Tisch *in Germany is now as much as a Table in England; whereas a Disch signifyes here a little platter, to serve the meat in.* der drekk *or* trekk *the dreggs is in Dutch as much as mock or dirt, but in Englisch it signifyeth our word* hœfen *or the Latin* faeces; *our word* luft, *Hollandisch* lucht, *air or vent, is no more used by the Englisch unless in to lift up,* aufl*ü*ften *or* sublevare *qs.* in aerem; *lofty,* l*ü*ftig *or* elatus *qs.* in aerem *or* superbus; *a- loof or loof,* in aperto aere *or* in superiori aura. eine st*ü*de, *Eng. a steed, AS.* stodmyra *i. equa ad foetum, is taken now in Englisch for an excellent brave and gallant horse.* krank *in our tounge is used for sick and weak, but in the Englisch it importes the contrary. of our word* wissen, *Holl.* weeten *i. to know, in*

Engliſh is now uſed only to wit *and the imperfect* wote. *the A Saxonick and the Frankteutonick word* hereberga *and* heriberga *did of old ſignify as much as in Latin* manſio exercitus *or* caſtra, *according to its compoſition of* Her *or* Hær *i. e.* exercitus militum *or* army, *and* bergen *i. abſcondere or to hide; but now both our word* hærberge, *and the Lowdutch* herberghe, *as alſo the Franco-Gallick* auberge hauberge *or* herberge, *the Ital.* albergo, *the Span.* alvergue *coming all from thence, ſignify a lodging for any ſtranger, but the Engliſh word* harbour *being of the very ſame pedegree, only for ſhips, in ſtead whereof we have the word* thiff - haven *Holl.* ſchip - haven; *and in lieu of the other we uſe now* Hær - læger *or* Krieges - lager *i. leaguer &c. whereby every one may eaſily ſee, that never ſo learned a man whoever, is able fully and radically to underſtand as any other language (though his own) derived from ours, ſo eſpecially the Engliſh, without ſome knowledge of the German toung. for how emphatick and ſignificant be the moſt part of the beſt Engliſh words derived from us e. g. king, Godfory or Godfrid, Frederick, Richard, beadle, alderman, husband, woman, quick ſilver, window &c. would be too long here to deſcribe; therefore we ſhall bring forth but one example viz. Goſpel commonly taken abuſively for evangelion or good and merrie news, whereas it clearly and properly ſignifyes both a bad and a glad tiding, as coming from* Gott *God*

and ſpell *hiſtory or ſermon*, and that from ſpellian *to ſpelle*, which in the *ASaxonick* denoted (as it does ſtill in the *Belgick*) to interpretate explicate &c. and thus Gottſpel or *Goſpel*, *AS.* Godſpell, *old-Frankiſh* Gotſpel *importeth as much as a divine hiſtorie or an interpretation and explication not only in matter of Chriſt's bleſsed incarnation and birth, happie redemtion of mankind, comfortable ſending of the holy Goſt, gratious forgivneſs of ſin, life everlaſting and other joifull things to all penitent ſinners, but alſo of the whole Triunities Eſsence, attributes and works belonging as well to his juſtice as to his mercy; where the former, to wit, the conſuming wrath of the incenſed God, the laſt Judgement, the cruell divel, flaming hell, eternall torment and other fright-full things cannot but κατ' ἀντίφρασιν be termed evangelium or bonum laetumque nuncium in reſpect to the wicked and damned.*

nevertheleſs the inhabitans of the countrie eſpecially of the Northern parts of England and generally in Scotland retaining better their nativ words (and thoſe of Kent and Suſsex becauſe of their neighbourvood and converſe with the Dutchs) come very nigh to our expreſsions, whereby they have a greater advantage to attain with more facility to our and the Lowdutch language, than any other people in the world. for in ſtead of the words (now commonly uſed in ſuch places, where gentle folks of both ſexes, ſchollars and courtiers live and beare the ſway) e. g. a bridge, cheſt, broom, oats, cough, church; paleſaced, ſtrong, ſtiff; to cover, to revenge, to dwell &c. they

Say: a brigge, kist, biesem or beasom, haven, huste, kirke, bleak, stark, stife; decke, wreake, to wone; from the High-german: eine brûkke *or* brigge, kûste *or* kiste, besen *or* besem, haber *or* haver, hust *or* husten, kirhe; bleih, stark, steif; dekken, ræhen, wonen; *Hollandish:* een brucke, kiste, besem, haver, kerke, bleek, sterk, styf; dekken, wreecken, woonen

Sect. 3. *of* the Compounded Words.

here we should adde the art of making lawfully new words (called else Onomatopoeia) as the third sort of etymologie; but that we waite for a better opportunity, we will at the present give a hint of our compounded words, the which if anatomised and opened from their ground, will give the Learner an accurate and clear understanding of them, as having a congruity with his owne toung, and bearing in their single roots diverse things, that expresse in composition the nature of one only thing though of various respects, as they make one only (compounded) word and name e. g. like as we say in High-dutch and English gold-smitt *gold-smith*, stokkfish *stock-fish*, shulmeister *schoole-master*, shumaher *shoe-maker*, shu-læist *shoe-last*, haus-halting *house-holding*, bir-bræwer *beer-brewer*, bræu-haus *brew-house*, shasirt *sheap-heard*, bluts-freind *blood-freind*, feyer-zange *fire-tonge*, lein-wæber *line-weaver*, pomp-wasser *pomp-water*,

boſom-freind, *boſom-freind*, augen-lid *eye-lid*, buh-binder *book-binder*, lamms-fuſs *lambs-foot*, ſtif-vater *ſtep-father*, ſtif-mutter *ſtep-mother*, halb-bruder *half-brother*, halb-ſweſter *half-ſiſter*, kwekk-ſilber *quick-ſilver*, deitungs-mann *tidingman*, ſne-ball *ſnow-ball*, fuſs-ſtapf *footſtep*, ſonn-tag *ſunne-day*, montag *monday*, donners-tag *thurs-day*, freitag *fryday &c. ſo an Engliſh-man knowing the ſingle words, will preſently underſtand the meaning of the compound, when we ſay e.g.* eine wol-tat *qs. well-deed, a benefice.* ein fleiſh-hawer *qs. fleſh-hewer or one that chops the meat in pieces, a butcher.* ein zimmer-mann *qs. timber-man or one that works in timber, a carpenter.* alle-zeit *qs. all-tide or all-time, alwayes.* eine zeit-vertreibe *qs. driving a way the time or a paſtime.* Gottes-akker *qs. Gods acker, churchyard.* maus- *or* ratten falle *qs. mouſ-or rat-fall, trap.* wol-luſt *qs. well-luſt, pleaſure.* ſonn-abend *qs. ſunn-evening i. ſaturday*; mitt-woh *qs. the middle day in the week i. wednesday*; vornam *qs. forename or the name that ſtands before the ſirname i. Chriſten-name*; zunam *qs. toon-name or the name added to the Chriſten-name i. ſirname*; brande-wein *qs. burned wine or brandy*; kæſe-made *qs. cheeſe-moath, magot*; feld-zeihen *Belg.* veld-teken *qs. field-token, a ſcarff of a ſoldier*; or-feige *qs. earfigg, box on the ear*; butter-faſs *qs. butter-fat, churn*; bærenhæuter *qs. one that lyeth alwayes upon a beares-hide or-ſkin (uſed in the times of old by the German ſoldiers to ſleep upon) i. laſy fellow.*

ein reben-pfennig *qs. a reckon-penny or a counter.* ein arm-band *qs. arm-band or bracelet.* ein fuſs-eiſen *qs. foot-iron, a fetter or ſhackle.* ein hoſen-band *qs. hoſe-band or a garter.* ein zigel-ſtreiher *qs. a tile-ſtriker or a brickmaker.* mon-ſhein *qs. moon-ſhine or moon-light.* ein irr-wiſh / irr-liht *qs.* irr-wiſk / irr-light *will of the wiſp* pfeffer-kuhen *qs. pepper-cake, ginger-bread.* eſel-treiber *qs. aſs-driver, one that lookes and goes after the aſses.* ſeifen-ſider *qs. ſope-ſeether, one that makes ſope and candles, a chandeler.* ein par hand-ſhue *qs. a pair hand-ſhoes i. a pair of gloves.* ein laub-froſh *qs. a leaf-frog, a green frog feeding on leaves.* gros-vater *qs. great-father, grand-father.* groſe-mutter *qs. great-mother, grand-mother.* ein ſtraſen-ræuber *qs. ſtreet-robber, highway-man.* tod-feind *qs. death-feind, implacable enimy.* hornu-man *qs. horn-man, cuckold.* wein-haus *qs. wine-houſe, taverne.* buh-hændler *qs. book-handler, book-ſeller.* fiſh-hændler *qs. fiſhhandler, fiſh-monger.* abend-mal *qs. evening-meal, ſupper.* mittag-mal *qs. midday-meal, dinner.* ein landsmann *qs. a man of the ſame land, countrieman.* zukker-bækker *qs. ſugar-baker, confectioner.* ſing-vogel *qs. ſinging fowl, a bird that whiſtles.* ein dib-hænker *qs. thief-hanger, a hang-man.* hut-maher *qs. hat-maker,* ein hûter *a hatter.* finger-hut *qs. finger-hat, a thimble.* ein zan-breher *qs. tooth-breaker, a tooth-drawer.*

hæi- / wein- / herbſt monat *qs.* hay- / wine- / harveſt *month i.e.* *Julius* / *October* / *September &c*

Orthologia

OR

The Third Part of Words in their Conſtruction.

Chap. I. of the *Syntaxis.*

though our conſtruction be commonly knowne not onely by either the Greek or Latin Grammar, but alſo by the Engliſh it ſelf, wherin our manner of expreſſion frequently prevailes; nevertheleſs we cannot but touche at leaſt thoſe neceſſary obſervations, that acquainte the learner with our generall proprieties and idiomes, leaving the ſpeciall particularities for the next and laſt Chapters.

Sect. 1. *of* the Conſtruction of Nouns.

R. 1. *the adjectivs goe alwayes before their Subſtantives and the articles before them both e. g.* etlihe meiner freinde *ſome of my friends not* etlihe freunde meiner *ſome friends of mine &c.* ein halbes pfund, ein halbes jar *&c. a half pound, a half year, not* halb ein pfund, halb ein jar, *half a pound, half a year.* *yet we ſay* der zwitter iſt halb ein mann und halb ein weib *the hermaphrodite is half a man and half a woman,* das ſe-wunder war halb eine jungfrawe und halb ein fiſh *the ſea-monſter was half a maid and half a fiſh;* ein ſolher mann *and* ſolh

ein mann *such a man*, eine ſolhe tohter *and* ſolh eine tohter *such a daughter*, ein ſolhes buh *such a book*; welh *(and* was vor) ein mann iſt das *! what a man is this!* alle di kinder, alle kinder *and* di kinder alle *all the children*; all das volk *all the people*; all di ſtatt *or* welt *all the town or world.*

R. 2. *the adjectivs after a verbe keepe alwayes their abſolute termination without any change either in reſpect of the ſubſtantives gender or number, as in Engliſh e.g.* der mann, di fraw, das kind iſt alt *the husband, wife and child is old*; di mænner, di frawen, di kinder ſind alt *the husbands, wives and children are old &c. unleſs they be preceded by either of the articles e.g.* diſe waren di weiſen aus morgen-lande *they were the wiſe men out of the East*, ſi waren di elenden *they were the miſerable ones*, er iſt groeſser *or* der groeſs-ere *he is bigger or the bigger*, ſi iſt fetter *or* di fettere *ſhe is fatter or the fatter*, ſi ſind di fetteſten *they are the fatteſt &c. the ſame is to be obſerved, when the ſubſtantiv immediatly precedes the adjectiv; for then this ſuffers its finall alteration both in the ſingular and plurall number through all gendres and caſes e.g.* er iſt ein erliher (der erlihe) mann *he is an (the) honeſt man*, ſi iſt eine (di) erlihe frawe *ſhe is an (the) honeſt woman*, es iſt ein erlihes *or* das erlihe kind *it is an (the) honeſt child*, ſi ſind alle erlihe leute *they are all honeſt people*, wir ſind alle elendige menſhen *we are all miſerable men &c.*

R. 3. *when we count or number, the leſs ad-*

jeſſiv of the compound both cardinall and ordinall number, being over twentie and under an hundred, goes before the greater one, coupled with the particle und and, e.g. ein und zwan-zig one and twentie, der-di-das ein und zwanzigſte the one and twentieth, ſiben und ſeh-zig ſeven and ſixtie, der-di-das ſiben und ſehzigſte the ſeven and-ſixtieth &c. not zwan-zig ein twentie one, zwanzig erſte twentie firſt, ſehzig ſiben, ſehzig ſibende, ſixtie ſeven ſixtie ſeventh. but the reſt both of the compound and ſingle number, as well under twentie as over an hundred, are conſtrued as in Engliſh e. g. neine, zwœlfe, drei-zeen, hundert und ein, hundert und zwei &c. nine, twelve, thirtien, an hundred and one, an hundred and two; der-di-das neinte, zwœlfte, drei-zeende, hundert-und erſte, andere &c. the nineth, twelfth, thirtienth, hundred and firſt, ſecond. we obſerve nature moſt exactly, when we will expreſse the time, making firſt of all mention of the day, then of the month, and at laſt of the year; as for the preſent we write and ſay den fünften tag des winter-monats i'm ſehzeen hundert nein und ſibenzigſten Hæil-jare December the fifth 1679. a ſpeciall and uſuall manner of ſpeaking is, when we ſay halben weg vire or auf vire qs. half way four or upon four, halben weg eins or auf eins q. d. half way one or upon one &c. where-as the Engliſh ſay: half an hour paſt three or before four, half an hour after twelf or before one; ein tag oder ſehſe (qs. one day or ſix) about ſix dayes one leſs or more; binnen

aht tagen *qs. within eight dayes*, binnen virzen tagen *qs. fortien dayes*, binnen drei virtel jar *qs. three quarter year &c. instead whereof they say in English: within a sennight or seven-night, a fort-night, nine months or three quarters of a year.*

Sect. 2. *of* the Construction of Verbes.

R. 1. *the Verbes* befreyen *to free*, benemen *or* berauben *to strippe or robbe*, bezihtigen *to blame*, entledigen *or* entnemen *to unloade*, erinnern *to putte in mind or to remember*, entsezen *to depose*, gedenken *to mention*, gewæren *to grante*, harren *or* warten *to stay for*, loszælen *or* losprehen *to quite or forgive*, versihern *to assure*, überweisen *or* überzeugen *to convince with arguments or witnesses*, würdigen *to count worthy*, zeyen *to accuse*, missen *to misse*; sæilen *to saile*, *and all the Reciprocks doe always receive the fourth case of the person and the second of the thing, which later is done, whether the verbe be active, passiv or Reciprocall; but the former only, when it is activ and neutrall; for the passiv verbe receiveth then the first case of the person e. g.* ih versihere euh dessen *i assure you of this*, er ist dessen versihert *he is sure of this*, er shæmet sih einer solhen tat *he is ashamed of such a deed.* *of the same construction is the substantiv verbe* sein *to be, added to a verball noun or participle of the sail or the like verbs e.g.* er ist dises mordes giltig *or* shuldig *he is guilty of this murther &c.*

bither are to be brought the following expressions, having some affinitie with the second case and signify commonly the state or disposition of a thing e. g. dreiges fuſses *with dry foot*, nühternes mundes *with a fasting mouth*, bloſes angeſihtes *with a bare face or bare-faced*, des tages *by day*, des nahtes *by night*, des erſten *or* andern *&c.* tages *the first or second &c. day*, des morgens *in the morning*, des ſommers *in the summer*, des winters *in the winter*, einsmals des jares *once a year*, zweimals des monats *twice a month*, er ginge ſeines weges *he went (on) his way &c.*

R. 2. *when the verbe ſtands betwixt two nouns, the worthieſt (that is either the first or the second) goes before it and the third followes, e. g.* ih bin es *qs. i am it*, du biſt es *qs. thou art it &c. not* es iſt ih, es iſt du; *it is i, it is thou*; ir ſeid es niht, di da reden, ſondern ewers vaters geiſt iſt es, der durh euh redet *it is not ye, that speake, but the ſpirit of your father, Matth.* 10, 20.

R. 3. *the adverbes doe commonly precede the oblique caſes, which promiscuously followe after the auxiliar verbe or, for want of that, after the principall e. g.* geet geſwinde mit der arzeneye zu den Kranken *goe quickly with the phyſick to the ſick body*, ih bin heute in der kirhen geweſt *i have been to day in the church*, er war geſtern mit mir bei dem buhbinder *he was yeſterday with me with the bookbinder.* *but when the verbe is preceded by an indefinit particle, the oblique caſes precede alſo, and the auxiliar is put after the*

principall verbe or its participle, which (principall verbe and auxiliar) both muſt elſe be kept to the end of the propoſition, eſpecially in its (being compoſed) former part, and in the later the verbe either auxiliar (if it be preſent) or principall goes ordinarly before the firſt caſe e. g. nahdeme Judas ſeinem meiſter hæil gewünſhet hatte, küſsete er in *when Juda had wiſhed hail to his maſter, he did kiſse him.* ſo bald als nur der vater ſeinen ſon erſeen wird, ſo wird er in um den hals fallen, *as ſoon as the father ſhall ſee his ſon, he will embrace him.* wann ih euh inn dem garten gehœret hætte, ſo wolte ih mit freuden hinnein gegangen ſein und mit euh von unſerer ſahe geredet haben, *if i had heard you in the garden, i would have gone thither to ſpeake with you about our buſines.* wer mih wird vor den menſchen verlæugnen, den will ih auh vor meinem himmliſchen vater verlæugnen, *whoſoever ſhall deny me before men, him will i alſo deny before my father, which is in heaven, Matth. 8, 38.*

R. 4. to ſhewe a different reſpect to different perſons ſpoken or written to; neceſsity or at leaſt civility requires, to make uſe of diverſe expreſsions alſo, ſeing there is a notable difference between a rationall creature and irrationall beaſt as dog or cat; between a mad or clown-iſh fellow, and a civil man; or betwixt this (though civil and honeſt, yet mean and vulgar man) and a perſon of learning and quality; to ſay nothing of Demigods, as Heroes, great Princes and crowned Heads, whence it comes

to pass, that the Germans (considering this better than any people in the world else, and not regarding either the Latin, the Greek or the Oriental tonges differing herein quite from ours spoken now a dayes in Europe, nor mattering the Grammaticisme, much less the Fanaticisme) doe speake and write to one that has no reason as beasts and other senseless creatures, or has not the use of reason and his own liberty as mad people, children and our own servants &c. in the second person singular, and to servants of others or to the common sort of people as peasants and tradesmen are, in the second person plurall; but to a Gentleman or Gentlewoman and upwards, in the third person singular, and to a magistrat of authority (though a single person) in the third person plurall, now in the concrete and then in the abstract, which is often done with some title added. when we have turned our face towards that person whome we would speake to, we say e. g. to a labourer or a journieman of a handicraft, which does not work for him self nor has made his masterpiece, Heinrih wa leid ir gewesen oder wa wollet ir hingeen? but to a tradesman, that has made his masterpiece, we add the word meister, as meister Heinrih *master Henry*; the wife of this we doe call jungefrawe *mistres*, but that of the other is called only by her Christenname; to a Gentleman der Herr gee herein, or mein geneigter Herr beere mih doh mit einem zuspruhe; to a married Gentlewoman di Frawe or meine vilgeerete Frawe belibe zu sizen; to an unmarried di Jungfer or meine

geerete (ſhœnſte) Jungfer laſse ſih doh erbitten; *to a knight* der geſtrenge Herr *or* ewer geſtrengten hat hir einen guten hund; *to his noble Lady* di geſtrenge Frawe *or* ire adlihe (hohadlihe) Tugenden, *the later word we uſe alſo, when ſhe is yet unmarried; to a Baron and Earle* der gnædige Herr *or* ewer (Herrlihe *or* Græflihe) Genaden hat *or* haben hir einen luſtigen garten; *to a great Prince* ewere Fürſtlihe Durhlæuhtigkeit hat *or* haben eine ſtattlihe rüſtkammer; *to a King or an Emperour* ewere (Kœniglihe *or*) kæuſerlihe groſsmæhtigkeit (*or* Majeſtæt) hat (*or* haben) einen groſen ſig erhalten. *and thus in as well Eccleſiaſtick as Politick and Civil ſtate, e.g. to an Archbiſhop* der hohwürdige Herr *or* ewer hoherwürden; *to a Biſhop and antient Deacon* der wolerwürdige Herr *or* ewer wol-erwürden; *to a Parſon* der erwürdige Herr *or* ewer erwürden; *to a Vice-chanchelor* der grostætige Herr *or* ewere grostætigkeit *or* magnificenz; *to a Doctor* ewere vortreffligkeit *or* excellenz *&c. the ſame doe alſo ſome of the Lowdutch, which particularly take it as a piece of a phantaſtick ſullenneſs and enthuſiaſtick humor to addreſs themſelves to God in their prayers and other holy ſervices with a leſs reſpectfull language, than they uſe in common converſation with civil men, and therefore they write and ſay e.g. in the Lords prayer* onſe vader, di daer zyt in de hemelen; gehe ylight werde uwe name; uwe ryck kome; uwe will *&c. or Pſ.* 119. *v.* 168. Herr! ik onderhoude

uwe beveelen en uwe getuygeniſsen: want alle myne weghen zyn voor u &c. *word for word: our father, which are in the heavens; hallowed be your name; your kingdome come; your &c. and, Lord! i keep your precepts and your testimonies: for all my wayes are before you.*

Sect. 3. *of* the Conſtruction of Particles.

R. 1. *the particles denoting quality or quantity doe immediately precede the infinit mood, as also the oblique, except when we beseech or command. for here and in the rest mood they followe either after the principal verbe or, if there be any, the auxiliar; which is to be observed also of some other particles, especially that signify the time e.g.* wol zu duen vergeſset niht, *to doe good, forget not, Ebr.* 13, 16. ringet darnah, daſs ir erbarlih wandelt *studie, ye may behave your selves honestly* 1. *Thess.* 4, 12. bætet ſtæts *pray allwayes. Eph.* 6, 18. wandelt weislih *walke wisely. Col.* 4, 5. ſhæmet euh niht, di warheit frei und künlih zu bekennen *be not ashamed, to confess the truth freely and boldly.*

R. 2. *when as before verbes there comes an adverbe either mediadly or immediadly; then the verbes come before the pronouns in the later part of the sentence, as we have seen in the* 3. *R. of the preced. Sect. e. g.* ſo bald ih eweren brif empfangen hatte, ſhikkete ih eine antwort zurükke *as soon as i had received your letter, i returned an answer;* nah verrihtetem geſhæfte kerete ih um

after i had done my busines, i returned; hir taten wir es *and* wir daten es hir *here we did it*, gestern waren wir lustig und heute sind wir traurig *yesterday we were merry and to day we are melancholy &c.*

R. 3. *the negativ particle* niht (*expressing the Latin word* non *and the English Not, or No standing before a comparativ adverbe e.g.* niht mer *no more or non amplius*) *is of the same construction with the other indefinit particles, but the other parts of speech doe sometimes followe it and sometimes goe before it. the Latin adjectiv* nullus, a, um, *or the English* none *or* no *before a Substantiv is rendred in our toung* keiner, e, es, *but the negativ adverbe or denying particle* no *of the Spaniards, Italians and Englishmen is in Lowdutch* neen *and in Highdutch* nein, *after which we repeate sometimes in the answer almost the whole question to confirme the better our negation e. g.* habet ir niht ein messer bei euh? nein, ih habe keines bei mir *have you no knife about you? no, not i, or i have none*; habet ir auh einzigen mangel gehabt? ni keinen, *lacked ye any thing? nothing. Luc.* 22, 35. Herr! füre uns niht inn versuhung, *Lord! leade us not into temtation*; es hat kein aug gesehen, und kein or gehœret, ist auh inn keines menshen herz kommen, was Gott bereitet hat denen, so in liben, *no eye hath seen, and no ear hath heard, neither came into mans heart, which God hath prepared for them, that love him*, 1. *Cor.* 2, 9. ewere rede sei ja ja, nein nein *let your commu-*

nication be yea yea, nay nay. Mat. 5, 37.

R. 4. *after the particles* wiwol, ob, obwol, oblhon, ob-auh, *ſtanding in the forepart of a propoſition, followeth one of theſe* dennoh, idoh, doh, ſodoh. *in the hinderpart, e. g.* ob er gleih reih iſt, ſo lebet er doh armſelig *though he be rich, yet he lives very miſerably.*

R. 5. zwar *or* zward *(ſtanding ſeldome in the beginning of a ſentence) requires in the later part* doh, idoh, aber, *e. g.* der geizhals hat zwar vil geld inn ſeiner kiſten, der teufel aber hat (*or* doh hat der teufel) den ſlüſſel darzu *the covetous hath much money in his cheſt, but the devil hath the key to it.*

R. 6. diweil, weil, demnah, ſintemal, nahdem, *of the firſt part are followed in the later by* als, ſo, darum, derowegen *e. g.* weilen ir ſolhes getan habet, ſo ſoltet ir geſtrafet werden, *ſince ye have done ſuch a thing, ye ought to be puniſhed.*

R. 7. *the prepoſitiv particles conſtrued with the relativ pronouns* dar *or* da *there*, wa *or* war *where*, hir *or* hi *here*; *likewiſe* wegen, halber *or* halben, gegenüber *conſtrued with other nouns, become poſtpoſitions and follow their nouns alwayes; except* wegen *and* gegenüber *ſtand alſo before them e. g.* wamit *or* warmit *wherewith*, waraus *not* waaus *whereout*, hizu *or* hirzu *hereto*, hirauf *not* hi auf *hereupon &c.* des bruders wegen *or* wegen des bruders *for (or in behalf of) the brother*, unſerm hauſe gegenüber *or* gegenüber unſerm hauſe *overagainſt our houſe*,

meinet (deinet, ſeinet, iret, unſeret, eweret, iret) wegen, halben halb *or* halber, willen *in my (thy, his, her, our, your, their) behalf. ſee the* 3. *Sect. of the* 3. *chapt. in the II. part. note here by the way, that the pronouns here mentioned, being in lieu of* welher, e, es *&c. are fit for any number, caſe, gendre and perſon without any change of their finall termination, as in Engliſh, e. g.* ſeid ir mit diſen bedingungen (diſem vorſlage, diſer antwort &c.) zu friden? ja wir ſind damit zu friden *are you content with (theſe conditions, this propoſal) this anſwer &c. yes we are contented therewith.*

R. 8. *the prepoſitions are of as many ſorts and diverſe conſtruction, as we have oblique caſes. for ſome of them govern the ſecond,* as auserhalb *without or out of*, innerhalb *within*, hinterhalb *there abouts behind*, unterhalb *thereabouts below*, diſſeit *on this ſide*, jenſeit *on the other ſide*, ſeit *or* ſint *ſith*, mitten *or* zu mitten *in the midſt*, von-her *becauſe*, lang *time. e. g.* auſserhalb der ſtatt *out of the citie*; mein lebens lang *or* lebelang *as long as i live or my life time &c. the words* wegen *or* von wegen, halben, halb *or* halben, willen *or* um-willen, vermittelſt, vermoege, kraft, laut, innhalts, beſage, angeſeen, unang ſeen, unverhindert *&c. are uſed as prepoſitions with the ſame caſe; but (to ſpeake accuratly) theſe are nouns, as in Latin* cauſa, gratia, medio *or ſuch like e. g.* um Gottes willen *for Gods ſake*; vermittelſt goldes und ſilbers *by the*

help of gold and ſilver &c.

ſome of them require the third caſe, as aus *out*, beſeit *or* beſeits *beſide or beſides*, binn-en *within*, gegenüber *overagainſt*, mit *with*, nah *after*, nae *nigh*, næhſt *nighſt*, ob *over*, von *of from by*, zu *at, e.g.* nah mir *after me*, ſi reden von euh *they ſpeake of you*, ſi entfinge es von mir *ſhe received it from me*; er wird von ſeinem meiſter geſlagen *he is beaten by his maſter &c.* binnen *and* innerhalb *ſeem to govern alſo the ſecond caſe e.g.* binnen (innerhalb) zweyen jaren *and* zweyer jare *within two years &c. where we may underſtand the word* friſt *or* zeit, *thus* innerhalb zweyer jare zeit *within two years time.*

ſome of them require the fourth caſe, as durh *thorough*, *für *for*, gen *towards*, one *or* ſonder *without*, um *for*, wider *againſt*, *e. g.* durh di luft fligen *to fly through the air*, durh das waſſer ſwimmen *to ſwimme thorough the water*, durh di ſünde iſt der tod inn di welt kommen *by ſin came death into the world*, one mih *or* ſonder dih *without me or thee*, ſi trauren um ir kind *they mourn for their child &c.*

but ſome of them govern both the third and fourth caſes as, an *on*, auf *up or upon*, auſer *without*, bei *by or with*, gegen *againſt or towards*, hinter *behind*, inn *or* in *in into*, neben nebeſt nebſt *or* nebenſt *near*, über *over*, unter *under*, *vor *before*, zwiſh-en *betwixt or between*; *all theſe particles ſtand before the third caſe, when they ſignify*

at - and from a place, or (as the Latins say) in and de loco e. g. ih lige inn dem bette *i lay in the bed*, ih ſize auf dem ſtule *i ſit upon the ſtool*, er ſtande vor *or* zwiſchen mir und ir *he ſtood betwixt me und her &c. but denoting ad locum that is to - or into a place, they always will have the fourth caſe e. g.* er gabe mir's in's maul *he gave it me into my mouth*, ſezet euh auf den ſtul *ſet you down upon the chair*, er legte ſih vor *or* zwiſchen mih und den bruder *he did lay himſelf before or between me and the brother &c.* für *and* vor *both ſingle and in compoſition are often taken one for an other e. g.* fürwar *or* vorwar *truly*, fürſpreher *or* vorſpreher *advocate*, fürwenden *or* vorwenden *to pretend*, vorlegen *or* fürlegen *to lay before or for &c.*

when our diſcourſe is of a thing, that is or that happeth in a city, town or village; we commonly uſe the particle zu *anſwering the Engliſh At; but before the names of the countries and the appellativs is only uſed the particle* inn *e. g.* es gelhae zu *or* inn Venetig inn (*not* zu) wælſchlande *it did happne at or in Venice in Italy*; getrukkt zu (inn) Braunsweig, zu (inn) Paris, zu (inn) Dublin *&c.* inn Teutſchlande, inn Frankreiche, inn Irrlande *&c. printed at (in) Brunſwig, Paris, Dublin; in Germany, France, Ireland &c.* er iſset in der kühen *he is eating in the kitchin*; ſi wartet ewer (*or* auf euh) inn der kammer *ſhe ſtaith for you in the chamber.*

Chap. II. and III. of

the Highdutch and Engliſh Idioms.

as theſe Idiomes and manners of ſaying (the harder to underſtand, the more naturall they are to each tounges Genius) doe not all at once meet in our diſcourſes, hearing or reading now and then only one and an other of them, the which requires a good deal of trouble and time, before a ſtranger gets them together: ſo we would not bringe 'em into nice dialogues either by force, or by other common talk knowne already to everyone before, as well by his own language, as by the common grammar-rules and dictionaries; but we are ſure, that, if only theſe chiefeſt and ſometimes uncouth phraſes, here unfolded open to every-ones view, be well obſerved; the beginner will certenly by this help be better and ſooner inſtructed in the knowledge of either of our tounges, than by any other books made for that purpoſe.

Germaniſmes.	Angliciſmes.
ein vornemer Rat's-herr. ein geringer (flehter) mann.	*an Alder-man of great acount. a man of ſmall account.*
ein nihts würdiger menſh.	*a man of noaccount*
er hilte groſe ſtükke (or vil) auf ſi or von ir.	*at all, be made great account (or much) of her.*
ih frage niht vil dar-	*i make no great accoune*

nah, *or* ih ahte es niht ſo gar gros.
(not much) of it; i doe not care much for it.

warum niht?
why do not you?

ih vermeinte zu ver-harren; ih gedahte
i made account to zu verwarten. *ſtay.*

ſmæet mih niht; nam-et mih niht zu.
doe not abuſe me; do not call me names.

berihtet mih ja alles auf das fleiſigſte; tuet mir alles auf's genaweſte zu wiſen.
be very carefull to acquaint me (or to make me acquainted) with all.

einer von meinen freunden; meiner bekanden (freinde)
one of my acquaintance; an acquaintance einer. *of mine.*

was vor ein ſpil iſt da!
what ado is there!

ih könte mih kaum des lahens erweren *or* enthalten.
i had much ado to forbear (hold from) laughing.

lezlihen ſo vername ih es mit groſer mûe.
at laſt with much ado i perceived it.

ſehzeen jare alt, *or* als er ſehzeen jar alt war.
at ſixteen years of age; when he was ſixteen years of age.

vor diſem; eedeſen; vor zeiten; vor alters.
long agoe; in the time of old.

ſhon vorlængſten; vor einer gute weile.
a good (or reat) while agoe.

wi lange iſt es? vor wi vil jaren, tagen *or* ſtunden?
how long a goe? how many years, dayes or hours agoe?

vor etlihen jaren, tagen &c.
ſome years, dayes &c. agoe.

biſs an den lihten hellen tag.
till broad daylight

er iſt nur neulih geſtorben; es iſt niht gar lange, daſs er geſtorben. — *it is but a while agoe ſince he died.*

mein vater-land. — *my nativ countrie.*

ſi willigen alle darein; ſi ſtimmen allemit-einander einmůt-ig(einhellig)darein; alle kommen hirinnen über-ein. — *all are agreed upon it; this all agree upon; it is agreed upon by all, with one mouth, voice, mind.*

di zeit iſt geſezet *or* beſtimmet *or* beſloſsē. — *the time is agreed upon.*

ſi ſind des tages eins worden. — *the day is agreed on.*

er iſt noh a'm (*or* bei'm) leben. — *he is ſtill alive or living.*

es haben es andere auh getan. — *you are not allone in it.*

laſset mih zu friden. — *let me allone.*

laſset mih dafůr ſorgen; ih will ſhon rat darzu ſhaffen. — *let me allone for that; leave me to that.*

es iſt mir alles eins; es gilt mir alles gleih. — *it is all one to me.*

wenn wir ihtwas (*or* etwas) verſeen habō. — *if we have done any thing amiſs.*

er zœrnet mit euh; er iſt bœſe auf euh. — *he is angry at you or with you.*

ih verſtee niht das geringſte (*or* niht ein einziges) wort. — *i underſtand not any one word.*

ir werdet mih ſwerlih imals wider ſeen. — *you are never like to ſee me more or any more.*

nemet inn obaht, — *mind what you*

was ir vorhabet.	*are about.*
ſi ſind unter ein-ander unein.	*they are at odds.*
fraget er nah mir ?	*does he ask for me ?*
heiſet di amme (wær -terin) herkommen.	*bid the wetnurſe (dry-nurſe) come away.*
er merkete, daſs ir euh vor im fœrhtet.	*he perceived, you ſtood in aw of him.*
ſein pferd abrihten laſsen.	*to put his horſe to be back'd.*
der hengſt liſe ſih reiten *or* liſe auf-ſizen.	*the ſtonehorſe ſuffered one to back him, or, himſelf to be backed.*
er hælt ûbel haus; er fûret ein bœſes leben.	*he takes bad courſes.*
ir wiſset di leute niht zu kœrnen *or* niht reht an-zu lokken.	*you know not, how to lay baits for men.*
er verſwige ime niht das geringſte.	*he balked him not a whit.*
ih will ewer haus niht meiden.	*i will not balke your houſe.*
den getroffenen vergleih (*or* aufgerihten vertrag) halten.	*to ſtand to ones bargain.*
vor gerihte zu tuen haben; i'm rehte ligē.	*to plead at the bar.*
verrigelt di dore.	*bar up the dores.*
er iſt aus dem ganzen kœnigreihe verwiſen.	*he is barred out of all the kingdome.*
er gabe ime niht ein har nah.	*he bated him not an ace.*
er name kein blatt vor das maul, ſondern hilte ime alles fûr.	*he bated him not an ace, but told him of all.*

dem pferde di ſpörn geben; das pferd anſpornen.	*to clap ſpurs to the horſe.*
er hat di Franzoſen *or* di Venus-krankheit.	*he has a clap or the French pocks.*
eine ſlaht liferu; eine felt-ſlaht halten *or* duen.	*to give battel.*
er beſloſse des nächſten tages mit inen (zu ſlagen *or*) ein treffen zu duen.	*he reſolved the next day to give them battel.*
unſere nahbarinne iſt inn di wohen kommen.	*our neighbour is brought to bed.*
es wäre beſſer gewe-ſen *or* ir hettet vil beſſer getan, (daſs) ir hättet hir kein geblärr gemahet.	*you had better not kept a bawling here.*
der hund balle treffelih.	*the dogg kept a huge bawling.*
der preis ſei ſo hoh (*or* gros) als er immer wolle, es iſt ein guter kauf.	*be the price never ſo great, it is well bought.*
damit ih niht verdrüſslih falle.	*not to be tedious.*
ir ſelbeſt ſollet mir zeugniſs geben *or* mein zeuge ſein.	*you your ſelf ſhall beare me witneſs.*
er bereitete ſeinen weg-zug; er mahte ſih reiſe-færtig.	*he was making ready to be gone.*
was gelten hir di ſweine?	*what prices bear ſwine here?*
ſi ſind tewer *or* gelten vil.	*they beare a price.*

das Sizilisſhe honig iſt unter allen das beſte.	*Sicilian honey beares the bell away.*
mit reht *or* unreht.	*by hook or by crook.*
er hælt inen di wage; er duet es inen gleih.	*he beares up with them.*
er geet wi ein bawer inn das hunds-loh.	*he goes like a bear to a ſtake.*
ein alter ausgedinter landes-kneht.	*an old beaten ſoldier.*
ih will dir den kopf einſlagen *or* dreſhen.	*i will beat out your braines.*
wære es ſahe geweſen, daſs u. ſ. w.	*had it been ſo, that &c.*
der herr verpflihtet ime mih all zu ſere *or* all zu hoh.	*i am mighty beholding to you, Sir.*
ih will (tuen *or*) mih ſtellen, als ob ih da geweſt wære.	*i will make, as if i had been there.*
es iſt mir niht entfallen, was mir zu hand-en geſtoſen.	*i knowe what hath befallen me.*
er behælfet ſih mit den bettel-ſtükken.	*he gets his living by begging.*
er leget ſih auf's betteln.	*he ſeeks his living by begging.*
Gott behüte (*or* beware) euh!	*God be with you!*
er hatte es ſeinem ſwerde zu danken, daſs er niht wurde gefangen genommen.	*he was beholden to his ſword for his not being taken priſoner.*
es wird überall vor war gehalten.	*it is believed at every hand.*

wenn mir zu glauben ſteet; wenn mir einziger glauben mag beigemæſſen werden.
if i may be believed; if there is any believe in me.

ir ſollet mih das (*or* deſſen) ni überreden.
you ſhall never make me believe this.

was geet mih diſes an? was hab' ih doh damit zu duen *or* zu ſhaffen?
what is that to me? what doeth that belong to me?

all ſein dihten und trahten iſt dahinn (*or* darauf) gerihtet.
he bends all his wits about this.

er leget ſih ganz und gar darauf.
he bends himſelf wholy to this.

iſt er ſo erbiht darauf?
is he ſo bend on it?

was meinet ir, daſs wir nun gutes angreifen (*or* anfangen) müſſen?
what think you, had we beſt doe now?

wenn euh zu raten, ſo tuet, wi ih euh geheiſen.
you had even beſt doe, as i bad you.

ir kœntet niht beſſer verfaren dann ſo.
it were the beſt courſe you could take.

ein weib inn iren beſten jaren.
a woman of her beſt life.

meines behaltes; ſo vil ih mih erinnern kann.
to the beſt of my remembrance.

ih fluge fluhs das haſen-bannir auf; ih gabe ſtraks verſen-gelt.
i preſently betook me to my heel.

wider alles reht und alle billigkeit.
contrary to law and right.

ſi ergriffen geſwinde ire waffen.	*they quickly betook them to their weapons.*
was gilt es? was ſoll es gelten? was wollet ir legen? was wollet ir mit mir wetten?	*name your bet? ſay what bet you will lay on it? what will you bet on it?*
ih mag niht wetten; ih will nihts auf di wette ſezen; ih will niht um einen pfennig mit euh wetten.	*i will bet nothing. i will lay no bets (or wager) with you. i will not bet a penny with you, no not i.*
was hülfet es mir? was bin ih deſſen gebeſſert?	*what am i (the) better for this?*
wer gewinnet? wer træget das beſte davon?	*who has the better of it?*
ſi wollen nimande das geringſte nahgeben.	*they will give the better of it to none.*
geet auf di ſeite.	*give way or ſtand by.*
noh einmal (*or* noh eins) ſo dikke und drüber.	*as big again and better.*
er ſiet eſsig-ſawer aus.	*he looks as big as bull-beef.*
er ſneidet tapfer auf.	*he talkes big.*
ſi iſt hoes leibes; ſi iſt ſwanger.	*ſhe has a great bellie; ſhe is with child.*
eine wunde verbinden.	*to bind up a wound.*
er iſt einer von adel *or* ein geborner ædelmann.	*he is a nobleman or noble by birth.*
mann darf ime ſiheren glauben geben *or*) wol trawen; es iſt ime wol zu glauben *or* wol zu trawen.	*you may (credit or) give credit to him; he may be credited.*

ir kœnnet ganz nihts auf (*or* wider) in ſagen.	*you can not ſay, black is his ey.*
ei! wi wird es euh geen!	*blak's your day!*
ſnæuze dih du garſtig -er ſakk! *or* puze di naſe du unflat!	*blow your noſe, you ſlut you!*
heye! iſt nimand dar! nein, nimand; niht eine *or* keine leibſele.	*ho! is any body there? no, no body at all.*
er tate einen fæil-ſlag; er ſluge fæil.	*he miſsed his blow.*
ſi wurde zunder- (*or* feyer-) rot.	*ſhe bluſhed as red as fire.*
ein ding oben-hinn angaffen *or* erſnappen.	*to get a bluſh of a thing.*
war laſset ir euh ſpeiſen? *or* wa geet ir zu diſhe?	*where doe you board?*
ſi gingen (ſprangen) inn des feindes ſhiffe vermittelſt eines bretes.	*they boarded their enemies ſhips, by the help of a board.*
ih erkůnete mih ſi zu fragen.	*i made bold to aſk her.*
ih darf wol (*or* kůnlih) ſagen.	*i dare be bold to ſay.*
ih hab' ime eines gegeben *or* angehænget.	*i have given him a bone to picke.*
er mahete im gar kein gewiſsen darůber.	*he made no bones on it.*
ih hætte wollen mit dem geringſten (*or* kleinſten) winkel zu friden ſein.	*i would have been contented with any, though never ſo little a corner.*

auswendig lernen.	*to get without book.*
etwas inn ein buh tragen.	*to book a thing down.*
wa wollet ir hinn reiſen?	*wither are you bound?*
ſih i'm zaume (*or* inn den ſhranken) halten.	*to keep within their own bounds.*
du ſnæpperling! du gelb-ſnabel! du rozlæffel!	*you ſaucebox! you puppy!*
einen hinter di oren ſlagen; einem eine orfeige geben.	*to box one; to give one a box on the ear.*
er hat di kinderſhue ausgetreten *or* vertreten.	*he is paſt a child or a boy.*
bei anbrehung des tages.	*at (the) break of day.*
einen ſherz maken.	*to break a jeſt.*
ein pferd bændigen.	*to break a horſe.*
frü-ſtükken; das morgen-brot eſsen.	*to break his faſt; to eate the break-faſt.*
aufhœren zu arbeiten.	*to break off (or to leave) work.*
er kann keinen adem holen *or* ſhœpfen; niht zu aden kommen.	*he is out of breath.*
ih kann mih niht darzu gewœnen, und ſolte es auh mein leben gelten *or* koſten.	*i can not bring (or uſe) my ſelf to it for my life.*
di ſahe iſt nun dahin (gedihen, kommen *or*) gelanget, daſs &c.	*the matter is now brought to that paſs, that &c.*
er braht mir zu'r antwort.	*he brought me word.*
heutiges tages; iziger zeit.	*now a-dayes.*

laſset mih wiſsen;	*ſend me*
duet mir zu wiſsen.	*word.*
wol-an! mahet euh	*come! clear up*
wakker luſtig.	*your brow and look*
friſh-auf! erzeiget	*merrily on*
euh ſein frœlih! ſeid	gutes muts! *it.*
ſih zum krige rüſten.	*to buckle for war.*
ſih geben (als über-	*to buckle to one*
wunden;) *or* den	*i. to yeeld or*
kürzern zien.	*to ſubmitte.*
ih hatte zu duen *or*	*i had buſineſs in*
zu verrihten; ih ware	beſhæftiget. *hand.*
ein müſames leben.	*a life full of buſineſs.*
ih habe meine hænde	*i am full of bu-*
voll zu duen; ih habe	*ſineſs; i am very*
zu ſhikken und zu	ſhaffen. *buſie.*
einem zu ſhaffen	*to finde one*
mahen.	*buſineſs.*
kommet zu der (unter	*come to the bu-*
handen habenden)	*ſineſs in*
ſahe ſelbſt.	*hand.*
bei hellem ſonnen-	*to burne day-*
ſheine liht brennen.	*light.*
ir habet keine weit-	*you have not gone*
læufigkeit gebrauhet.	*about the buſh.*
es iſt beſser etwas	*one bird in the hand is*
denn gar nihts;	*worth two in the buſh.*
der hab' ih iſt gewiſser denn der hætt' ih.	
unverſeens; ungefær.	*by the by.*
beihalben; beilæufig.	*by the way.*
inn kurzem; alſo-	*by and by;*
bald; inn dem; von ſtund an.	*anon.*
es wird ime ein rum	*it will be for*
(*or* eine ere) ſein.	*his credit.*

wi nennet ir dis? wi wird diſes bei euh	*what doe you call this* geheiſen?
wi heiſet er? wi wird er genennet?	*what doe you call him? what is his*
wi heiſet ſein nam?	*name?*
ſeine ſhulden einfodern.	*to call for (or to call in) his debts.*
laſset das eſsen auftragen.	*call for meat.*
laſset zu trinken herbringen.	*call for drink.*
fraget nah der zehen. was haben wir zu bezalen?	*call for the account or the ſcore. what is (or have we) to pay?*
laſset in rehnung duen.	*call him to account.*
beſinnet (*or* bedenket) euh darauf.	*call it to mind or remembrance.*
nun fællet mir's ein; izo beſinn ih mih darauf *or* ih gedenke dran.	*now i call it to mind.*
kœnnet ir euh darauf beſinnen?	*can you call it to mind?*
ruffet bei mir an; ruft mih.	*give me a call.*
zu'm aufzuge *or* zu felde blaſen.	*to ſound a call.*
es heiſet ein eſel den andern einen ſakk-træger.	*the pot calls the pan burnt-(black-) arſe.*
ſi bitten vor ir leben *or* um gut wetter; ſi krühen zum kreuze.	*they call for quarter.*
ſi hiſe in kurz und lang wi ſi dazu kame.	*ſhe did call him all the nought, ſhe could.*
warumm namet ir ſi denn zu?	*what doe you call her names for?*

ſi ſlugen uns aus dem felde.	*they took our camp.*
es kann euh niht (bergen, unbewuſt *or*) verborgen ſein.	*you can not but knowe.*
es wil inen gar niht inn den kopf *or* kropf; es ſnuppet inen (*or* ſi) inn di naſe; ſi kœnnen's niht vertragen.	*they can ill (or not) away with it; they take ſnuff at it.*
gedenket er, daſs ih ime zu fuſe fallen (*or* in vil hofiren) wolle?	*does he think, i will come with cap in hand to him?*
er weis di karte zu ſeinem vorteil zu legen.	*he can pack the cards.*
ih muſs zuſeen *or* mih vorſeen.	*i muſt have a care (for.)*
nemet euh damit inn aht.	*have a care of this; take heed!*
was frage ih darnah?	*what care i?*
was bekümmere ih mih darumm?	*what doe i care (for.)*
mann muſs aht haben *or* ahtung geben.	*care muſt be taken.*
es ſoll inen niht geſhenket ſein.	*they ſhall not carry it ſo.*
eine reht-ſahe verliren.	*to be caſt in ones ſuit.*
di naht überfile in.	*night catched him.*
ſi lœſeten das kleine und grobe geſhüz.	*they did discharge their ſmall and great gunnes.*
meine ſhuldigkeit bei dem (*or* gegen den) Herren ab-zu ſtatten *or* ab-zu legen.	*to discharge my dutie to you, Sir!*
habe ih euh niht	*did i not charge*

tewer genung einge-bunden, dafs ir es niht duen ſoltet?	you, you ſhould not do it?
einen anfall auf des feindes reiterei duen.	to charge the enemies horſe.
das getræitig iſt ſhande wolfeil *or* gilt ein ſpot-gelt.	corne is dog-cheap or beares no price.
es flæget auf; es ſteiget.	it riſes in price.
das korn flæget ab; es fællet.	corne hath ſlackened; it is ſetled of price.
wir wurden fürſtlih (*or* herrlih) geſpeiſet.	we had royall (or good and great) chear.
wir wurden ſleht (*or* elende) bewürdet.	we had ſmall (or ſlender) chear.
oben an ſizen *or* geſezet werden. ſezen *or* ſizen laſsen.	to hold / give the chief place.
diſes iſt di hauptſahe.	this is the chief point.
er ware der allervornemſte obriſter.	he was in chief command.
von kindheit auf; von kindes beinen an.	from a (very) child.
er erkande ſein weib und zeigete ein kind mit ir.	he lay with his wife and got her with child.
ſi wurde von ime ſwanger.	ſhe is with child by him.
ir habet das (menſh *or*) weibes-bild ge-ſwæhet *or* zu'm fall gebraht;	you have gotten the wench with child;

ist es niht (also *or*) war? *have you not?*
si kriget kein kind mer *or* es geet ir niht mer nah der weiber weise. *she is past child-bearing or bearing of children.*
es steet bei uns; di wal ist unser; es ist (liget, steet) inn unserer maht *or* willkûre. *we may be at our choice.*
leset euh aus (*or* wælet euh heraus) was ir wollet *or* begeret. *take your choice.*
der ausshuss von bûrgern. *the most choice men of the citie.*
ausshuss-papir. *out-side paper.*
ir habet si euh selber (auserkoren, auserlesen, auserseen, ausgekernet *or*) auserwælet. *she is of your own chusing.*
ih kann mih des weinens niht (enthalten *or*) entbrehen; ih mus weinen *or* trænen vergisen. *i can not chuse but weepe.*
si ist engelrein *or* sonder allen tadel. *she is (without all blame or) innocent.*
si sind ganz ûber und ûber rein. *they are as clean as a clock, or as a penny.*
ih gefalle mir ganz niht mer. *clear out* *i am (clean, quite or) of love with my self.*
wi vil hat es geslagen? *what is it a-clock?*
um welhe zeit ist es? *what a-clock is it?*
di glokke slæget vire. *the clock strikes four.*
es ist bald um fûnfe. *it is almost five.*
der zeiger weiset auf halben weg dreye. *it is half an hour past two.*
wir rihten uns nah uns erem zeiger *or* nah unserer klokken. *we goe by our clock.*
ih erstaunete; ih verwarrete ganz. *i was at my wits end.*

eine halbe ſtunde vor zwœlfen *or* nah elfe; eine virtel ſtunde nah eins.
half an hour before twelve a clock; a quarter of an hour after one a clock.

er iſt ein rehter haſenkopf *or* has; er iſt ein erz-narr.
he is the very cock-comb or cock-fool.

wi ſolte ih's (wiſen *or*) erfaren, *or* zu wiſen bekommen?
how ſhould i come to know it?

ih komme; ih bin auf dem wege.
i am coming; i am a-coming.

es wird auf di lezte nihtes daraus werden.
it will come to nothing at laſt.

wann es um und um kommet.
when all comes to all.

zukünftige dinge vorſeen.
to fore-ſee things to come.

er gibet nimande i'm geringſten etwas nah a'm prahte.
he comes ſhort of (or behind) none for bravery.

wol bezæhet; berauſhet; beſoffen.
well come on in drink.

wa will diſes hinaus? was will daraus werden?
what will come on it? or-of it?

grüſſet beſter maſen alle meine freinde von meinet wegen.
have me heartily commended to all my freinds.

es læſſet ſih trefflih wol mit ime umgeen.
he is excellent company.

mann ſaget i'm gemeinen ſprih-worte; mann ſpriht in's gemein; mann pfleget zu ſagen.
it is a common ſaying.

haltet eine maſe.
keep within compaſs.

es geet mih niht gros an; es hülfet und hindert mih niht gar wil. — *it does not concerne me much; i am not much concerned in it.*

ih bin mit ſhaden darinnen klug worden. — *i have learned it to my coſt.*

es koſtet nihts weniger; nihts iſt wolfeiler. — *nothing ſtands in leſs coſt.*

er hat hopfen und malz daran verloren. — *he hath loſt both his labour and coſt.*

wir wollen es anders angreifen *or* anfangen. — *we will take an other courſe.*

ih pflege es alſo zu mahen; diſes iſt mein gebrauh. — *this is my (courſe or) common courſe.*

um di wette { laufen. / rennen. } — *to run { a courſe. / a race. }*

es wird der andere gang aufgetragen *or* aufgeſezet. — *the ſecond courſe is brought in or ſet on.*

es wird im andern gange mit eingethoben. — *it is brought up (or in) at the ſecond courſe.*

maht es, wi ir wollet. — *take your courſe.*

haſen (*or* wœlfe) jagen; eine haſen-(*or* wolfs-) jaht halten. — *to courſe hares or wolves.*

es ſlæfet einer (um den *or*) nah dem andern; ſi ſlafen wehſels-weiſe. — *they ſleep by courſes or by turnes.*

grobe ſpeiſe; grobe wolle; grobes papir. — *courſe fare; courſe wooll; courſe paper.*

ein friden-ſtœrer. — *an enemy to peace.*

einem mit woltaten (*or* hœfligkeit) zuvor kommen. — *to be before hand with one in benefits or courteſie.*

das frawen-zimmer neigete ſih. — *the Ladies made a courteſie.*

er iſt kein groſer praler *or* auf ſneider. — *he is not much given to crack.*

es ſteet (hæſslih *or*) garſtig, wenn ein menſh (ſih ſelber rûmet *or*) auf ſneidet. — *it is an ugly thing, to crack of a man ſelf.*

er wird euh den ſhetel (*or* kopf) einſlagen. — *he will crack your crown.*

ih jauhzete faſt vor freuden. — *i did almoſt cry out for joy.*

er bate ſi um verzeyung. — *he cryed her mercy.*

jderman ſhilt darûber, *or* fluhet darauf. — *every body cryes ſhame on it.*

er war ausgeſhryen wi ſawer bir. — *he was cryed up mightily.*

diſes mahet, daſs er ſo erbærmlih ſhreyet; — *that makes him cry out ſo.*

das iſt's warûber er ſo hæftig ſih beklaget.

wenn kame ir das gebæren *or* di wœe an? — *when did ſhe cry out.*

wenn lage ſi inn den kindes-nœten?

wir ſhryen ûber-laut. — *we did cry out.*

ſi kann iren kindern niht zuwider ſein. — *ſhe can not croſs her children.*

ei! ſeid mir doh niht ſo entgegen *or* zuwider. — *pray! doe not croſs me ſo.*

ſi færet iren emann an, wi di ſawe den bettelſakk. — *ſhe is croſs to her husband.*

wir hatten (bœſes, ûbeles, garſtiges *or*) ſtûrmiges wetter. — *we had croſs weather.*

mer dann (genug) *or* zu vil; ûbrig genung. — *enough and enough again.*

das wort liget mir auf der zungen *or* es lauf-et mir inn dem maule (*or* munde) herum.
the word is at my tounges end.

di kreuz - weiſe ge-ſhrænkten flůſſel ſind des Pabſtes zwei ſwerter.
the croſs keyes are the Popes two ſwords.

es iſt aus mit ime; es iſt um in (*or* mit ime) géſheen.
he is paſt cure, or remedy.

hœbet dir karte ab.
cutte the cards.

es duet mir inn der ſel-en (*or* i'm herzen) wœ;
it cuts me to the (very) heart.

es verdreuſt mih (von herzen *or*) herzlih.
it grieves me (heartily).

hir geet ir am næeſten; da kommet ir a'm eeſt -en; dis iſt der næeſte (*or* kurzeſte) weg.
this is the neareſt (or the ſhorteſt) cut.

einen zu'm kampf (*or* ſtreit) heraus-forderen.
to challenge (or dare) one to fight.

ih habe ſi ni als heute geſeen.
i never ſaw her before to day.

åber-morgen.
after to morrow.

eegeſtern *or* vorgeſtern.
the other day.

den dritten tag nah ſeiner ankunft.
three dayes after he came.

biſs es hoh a'm tage war.
till it was far of the day.

ih habe meine ſpringe (*or* dænze) getan.
my good dayes are done.

tag vor tag.
day by day.

zu mitter-naht *or* mitt -en inn der naht.
in the dead time of the night.

miſchet (*or* menget) di karte und gebet ſi wider.
ſhuffle the cards and deal them again.

ih bin ſer wol mit ime
i have got a

(dran *or*) bekant; ih ſtee ſer wol bei (*or* mit) ime.
handelt ir alſo mit mir? *or* geet ir ſo mit mir um?
ein weit meres *or* vil mer, vil weniger, vil beſſer.
ih will nihts mit euh zu duen (*or* zu ſhaffen) haben.
ſi haben mir leihtfertig mitgeſpilet *or* mitgefar-en; es iſt mir gewalt und unreht geſhee.
er mahet ein groſes (ſpil *or*) weſen.
geet aufrihtig mit mir um; handelt fein (erlih *or* redlih) mit mir.
ih habe mit dem bürgerlihen rehte zu duen.
ein unter-hændler; ein ſhid'smann.
mein libſtes herz! mein aller libſter ſhaz! mein libgen!
ſi hatten (*or* ſi hilten) in alle lib und wert.
es iſt noh ein mal ſo tewer; *or* es koſtet noh ein mal ſo vil.
es iſt bei leibs und lebens ſtrafe verboten; es koſtet einem das leben (den hals *or* den kopf) der es tuet.
wann ſoll der arme ſünder abgetan werden?

a great deal of acquaintance with him.
doe you deal ſo with me?
a great deal more, leſs, better.
i will have no dealing with you.
i am baſely dealt withall.
he keeps a deal of ſtir.
deal truly (or honeſtly) with me; uſe me well.
i deal in the Civill law.
one that deals between man and man.
my dear! my dear love!
he was dear to every one.
it is dearer by half.
it is death to doe it.
when is the priſoner to be put to death?

es læſet ſih noh darüber ſtreiten; *or* mann hat ſih noh darüber zu beratſlagen.
it falls under debate.

ſeine ſhulden einmanen.
to demand payment of his debts.

di aſhe auf dem herde iſt niht ſein; er ſtekket inn ſhulden biſs über di oren.
he is deeply (or over head and ears) in debt.

inn dem härteſten (*or* ärgeſten) winter.
in the deep of winter.

als ſeine güter inn das abnemen geräten.
when his eſtate was gone to decay.

ih mus ſi (one verzug *or*) ſonder aufſhub heraten *or* elihen.
i muſt be married to her without delay.

ir mahetet niht vil federloſens *or* aufzüge.
you made no delay at all.

ih date es (unverzüglih *or*) ſonder einziges zaudern *or* aufſhiben.
i delayed not the doing of it at all.

ih kann mih niht genug damit erluſtiren.
i can never be ſtalled with that deligbt.

wenn kame ſi inn di wohen? wenn gelage ſi? wenn genaſe ſi des kindes?
when was ſhe delivered?

es ſoll euh eure bitte gewæret werden; ir ſollet keine abſlæglihe antwort bekommen.
you ſhall not be denyed.

er krigte einen korb.
he got the ſlip.

er lebet inn den tag hinn ein wi eine wilde gans.
he makes even at the years end.

dorn- (*or* ſtahel-) bere.
goos-berries.

bevor ih ſterbe; ee ih aus diſem leben ſheide
before i depart this (world

or diſe welt geſegne; *or*) *life.*
noh vor meinem tode *or* abſterben.
das amt (*or* di obrig- *to depart out*
keitlihe gewalt) ab- *of office.*
legen *or* abtreten; abdanken.
ræumet mir mein haus! *depart my houſe!*
nah dem ih von euh ge- *after i departed from*
ſhiden (*or* gegangen) ware. *you.*
warnah mih hœhlih *what i have a great*
verlanget; warnah ih *deſire to.*
mih herzlih ſœne; warnah mih ſer gelüſtet.
ſi liget inn den lezten *ſhe is like to die;*
zügen; ſi will gleih *ſhe is juſt adying.*
izo iren geiſt aufgeben; der tod ſizet ir ſhon
auf der zungen; ſi ringet mit dem tode.
erd-bere ſind izo new- *ſtraw-berries are*
es von jare. *now novelty.*
wir ſind ein wenig an *there is a little ſmall*
ein ander geraten *or* *difference be-*
uneins worden; wir *twixt us.*
haben uns veruneiniget *or* zerzweyet.
das krigs-volk ab- *to diſband the*
danken. *army.*
er warf' es ime vor (*or* *he laid it in his diſh*
er rükkete es ime auf, *as a foul crime.*
or er ribe es ime inn di naſe) als ein
ſhændlihes laſter *or* als eine grobe miſſetat.
von ferne *or* von weitem. *at a diſtance.*
wi geet's dem herren, *how doe you,*
der frawen *or* jung- *Sir? Miſtreſs?*
frawen? *Madam?*
groſen dank (*or* ih be- *i thanke you; how*
danke mih) der nahfrage. *doe you doe?*
wi geet's des herren *Sir! how does your*

libſten ? *or* was mahet ewere jungfrawe gutes ?	*Lady ? how does your wife , Sir !*
es geet für-war niht an; gewislih es ſhikket ſih niht; traun es læſset ſih gar niht duen.	*it will not do indeed; to be ſure it does not.*
er hat immer etwas für, *or* zu duen.	*he is alwayes a-doing ſome thing or other.*
hætte ih di mittel darzu.	*had i wherewithall to doe it.*
es wird darüber (gearbeitet *or*) gemahet.	*it is now a-doing.*
ſeid ir fertig ? ja *or* ih bin fertig.	*have you done? yes i have.*
habt ir geſpeiſet *or* gemalzeitet ?	*have you done with your dinner , ſupper?*
wol bekomme den herren und dem frawen-zimmer di malzeit !	*Gentlemen and Ladies! much good may it doe you , or : much good may doe you , your dinner or your ſupper !*
trinket der herr tabak ? rauhet (*or* ſmœget) der herr ?	*doe you take (Tobacco or) a pipe ? doe you ſmoak , Sir?*
an der türe; für der dœre.	*at the dore.*
ih habe euh eine abſhrift des lezten willens zugeſand.	*i have ſent you a draught of the will.*
duet einen guten zug;	*drinke a good*
trinket einen wakkeren	*drunk. draught.*
rote Johannes-bere.	*redd currants.*
einen fluſs ableiten.	*to draw away a river.*
er brahte ſi auf ſeine ſeite.	*he drew them to take his part.*
ſi zogen vo'm leder ; ſi zükketen ire tegen *or* ir gewer.	*they drew their ſwords.*

der winter naet (herzu, herbei, *or*) heran.	*winter drawes, mar or drawes on.*
er mahte graben kwær über (*or* kwær-graben über) di wege.	*he drew trenches across the wayes.*
weil sih sein weib (anleget, antuet, smükket, ziret, puzet, aufpuzet *or*) zu rehte mahet.	*whil'st his wife is getting herself dressed; or is dressing her self.*
si geen stattlih einher *or* præhtig gekleidet; si halten sih kostbar (*or* hertlih) inn kleidung, auf di neweste art *or* nah der besten (*or* zirligsten) traht.	*they are dress'd in print; they are gon-en into a rich (or into a most pretious) dress, after the newest (neatest or best) fashion.*
rihtet di fishe zu.	*dress the fish.*
rihtet den garten an.	*dress the garden.*
mih doerstet; ih bin doerstig; ih habe dorst.	*i am dry or adry; i am thirsty or a-thirst.*
ih will ime eins zutrinken *or* zubringen.	*i will drink once to him.*
er brahte mir's; er tranke mir's zu;	*he did drinke to me.*
trinket es alles aus.	*drinke it all (out, up or) off.*
gebet ime zu (*or* lasset in) trinken.	*make him drinke, give him some drink.*
er gedenket mih zu boden (*or* darnider) zu saufen.	*he has a mind to drinke me down.*
kutsher! da hab't ir ein trank- (*or* trink-) geld.	*Coatchman! there is some thing for you to drinke.*
gesodene (erbs-) shoten.	*hot peas-cods.*

wamit geet doh der mann um? was hat der mann für? warnah ringet er? *what does the man drive at?*

einen mit geſhreie ũbertæuben *or* tumm und taub ſhreyen. *to drown one with a cry.*

das geld iſt noh niht gefællig. *the monney is not yet due.*

er iſt toll, niht aber dumm, vil weniger ſtumm. *he is mad and not dull, much leſs dumb.*

ſi hœrete niht gar (*or* all zu) wol; ſi ware etwas daub; das gehœr legete ir ab. *ſhe was ſomewhat dull of hearing.*

es lindert di kwal. *it dulles the pain.*

ih will euh (wakker abſmiren *or*) mit einem prügel empfangen. *i will duſt your coat for you.*

knæufelt ewere oren auf; ſpizet ewere oren. *prick up your ears.*

er iſt inn libe erſoffen; er hat ſih ganz und gar verlibet. *he is over head and ears in love.*

nimand iſt, der gehore; nimand hœret zu *or* mærket drauf. *no body gives ear.*

ih hab' eine bitte bei euh ein-zu legen vor N. *i have a ſuit to you for N.*

ih hab' eine groſe bitte an euh, daſs u. ſ. f. a. *i make earneſt ſuit to you for &c.*

er gabe ſeiner libſten etwas auf di libe; er gab' ir einen braut-ſhaz *or* einen mal-ſhaz. *he gave his ſweetheart an earnſt-penny.*

ſi gabe irer newen magd einen midgroſhen. *ſhe gave her new ſervant an earneſt-penny.*

gebet mir etwas drauf.	*give me earneſt.*
i'm winter leget deſto	*in winter-time ſet*
weniger eyer unter;	*the fewer eggs.*
des winters ſezet deſto	weniger eyer an.
er reizete mih da zu;	*he egged me on;*
er hezete mih an.	*he ſet me on.*
der ſommer ware bald	*ſummer was allmoſt*
vorbei geſtrihen, hin-	*at an end.*
weg gegangen, faſt ganz	vergangen.
er ſpiletemit dem gut-	*he made an end of the*
en alten das gar-aus;	*old man.*
er brahte den alten mann um, *or* um's leben.	
ſih mit einander ver-	*to make an end be-*
tragen *or* vergleihen.	*twixt themſelves.*
es kümmert in niht, ob.	*he does not care or*
es drunter oder drüber	*he cares not, which*
gee; er (læſet ſih's	*end goes fore-*
niht anfehten *or*) be-	*ward.*
kümmert ſih gar wenig, es mag gleih	
zu hinterſt oder zu fœderſt geen.	
es wære (um ſi geſhe	*there had been an*
-en geweſen, *or*) aus	*end of them,*
mit inen geweſt, wa niht &c.	*but that &c.*
faret fort! weiter!	*on an end! go an end!*
vergebens; umſonſt.	*to no end or purpoſe.*
es iſt ganz vergebens	*it is to no end in*
und umſonſt.	*the world.*
er iſt gemeiniglih (*or*	*he is there moſt an*
meiſtenteils) dar.	*end.*
eilet geſwinde, daſs ir	*get you an end*
fertig werdet.	*quickly.*
kommet eilens her!	*come an end.*
zu ende (*or* zu'm ende)	*to make an end*
bringen.	*of.*

meine hare ſtanden mir gen berge; das har ſtonde mir zu berge.
my hair ſtood an end.

er plaudert alles was ime einfællet ; wi es ime auf di zunge kommet.
he talks any thing, that comes next to his tounges end.

es iſt unter das volk kommen ; es iſt auskommen ; di leute tragen ſih überal damit.
folks have got it by the end.

nah dreyen tagen ; nah verflüſung dreyer tage.
by three dayes end.

ſtreitigkeiten entſheiten ; zwiſtigkeiten unternemen ; zweiſpaltungen (zank) aufheben.
to end differences or quarrels.

unſer künftiger tohter-mann.
our ſon in law that ſhall be.

er will durhaus niht heiraten.
he can not endure to marry.

eine mannbare dirne *or* jungfrawe.
a girle or maid at marriageable eſtate.

alles (*or* alle ſahen) nur obenhinn beriren.
to give a ſlight touch upon every thing.

von angeſite zu angeſiht.
face to face.

ih will euh eines in's geſiht *or* inn di freſſe geben.
i will lay you on the face.

ih habe kein herz (*or* keinen mut) es zu duen ; wi darf (*or* ſolte) ih diſes tuen ?
i have not a face to doe it ; with what face can (could) i doe this?

di kriges-here ſtunden ein ander reht i'm geſihte.
the armies ſtood facing one an other.

wi iſt mir doh mein anſlag (*or* meine hoffnung) zu waſſer worden!
how am i faild ed in my expectation!

ir ſeid ewerem verſprehen niht nahkommen; ir habt ewer wort niht gehalten.	*you have failed of your word; you have not been as good as your word.*
ir ſollet euh allezeit auf mih zu verlaſsen habē.	*i will not faile you in any thing.*
wenn ih ſi nur ſolte zu geſihte bekommen;	*if i could get a ſight of her, or ſet my*
wann ih irer nur kœnte anſihtig werden;	*ſight (mine eye) on her.*
kœnte (ſolte) ih ſi nur	*eræugen or erblikke.*
und ob ih noh ſo gerne wolte.	*if i would never ſo fain.*
wenn es nah unſerem wunſhe ergeet.	*if things fall out to our minds.*
geet mir vo'm leibe.	*ſtand off!*
ſi haben ſih verzœrnet.	*they are fallen out.*
ir werdet ewere angſt (*or* not) mit diſem kerl krigen.	*you will fall in hand with that fellow.*
zu lahen (zu ſlafen, ſih zu ſlagen und zu balg-en u. ſ. f.) anfangen.	*to fall a-laughing, a-ſleep, a-fighting &c.*
laſset uns zu was anders ſhreiten *or* greifen.	*let us fall in hand with ſomewhat elſe.*
krank werden.	*to fall ſick.*
wenn ir gebætet habt,	*when ye have ſaid*
ſo greifet (*or* langet) zu.	*graces, fall too.*
er lebet (erbærmlih. elendiglih *or*) armſelig.	*he fares hardly or pittifully.*
ob es gleih krig iſt, ſo wollen wir doh luſtig	*we will fare well for all the warr.*
und guter dinge (*or* frœliges gemûtes) ſein.	
habet ir euh mit ew-	*did you bid fare-*

eren freinden gelezet?	*well to your freinds?*
hab't ir abſhid von ew-	*have you ſhaken*
eren freinden ge-	*hands with your*
nommen ?	*freinds ?*
lebet wol ! Gott be-	*fare well ! God be*
folen !	*with you !*
ſi ſae mih ſtarr (*or* ſtar-	*ſhe faſtened her eyes*
gleih) an; ſi verwande	*upon me.*
niht ein aug (*or* einen blikk) von mir.	
er ſlæget ſeinem vat-	*he takes after his*
er nah.	*father.*
wir geben (legen *or*	*we father our fault*
wælzen) di ſhuld auf ſi.	*upon them.*
ſi ſagt, daſs ein ander-	*ſhe fathers the child*
er mann vater zu'm	*upon an other*
kinde ſei.	*man.*
ſi halten ime diſes vor	*they find fault*
übel ; ſi legen's ime	*with him for*
niht wol aus.	*that.*
er hat ſhuld dar-	*he is in fault or*
an.	*to blame.*
di ſhuld war niht ſein;	*it was not (or none*
er war unſhuldig daran.	*of) his fault.*
was wird mir (ſhuld ge	*what fault am i char.*
geben *or*) aufgebürdet?	*ged with ?*
einem eine gonſt er-	*to beſtowe a favour*
weiſen.	*upon one.*
mit urlaub *or* vergœnſt	*under favour or by*
igung ; mit gonſt zu-	u. ſ. w. *your favour.*
einem eine forht einjagen.	*to put one in fear.*
es hat keine not (gefar) niht.	*no fear on it.*
ih ſae es vor gut an, zu	*i thought good to*
fülen, ob ime auh di zæne	*feele his mind.*
felt ſteen, *or* zu ſeen was er i'm ſhilde füre.	

er will nur wenig haben; er iſt mit wenigen zu friden.
he is for having but a few.

ein ſo breiter weg, daſs vire darauf neben ein ander geen kœnnen.
a way enough for four to walk a-breast.

als das unglükklihe treffen gehalten ward.
when that fatall field was fought.

er will (genug bulen *or*) ſih ſatt liben.
he will have his fill of love.

ih bin alles dinges überdrüſsig.
i have had (or got) my fill of all.

er ernæret und verſorget das ganze haus alleine.
he finds all the houſe by himſelf.

kurz davon zu reden, es iſt fein, wenn einer ſeinen feind mit geld abſtrafen kann.
in fine, it is a fine thing, when a man can ſet a fine on his enemies head.

wi wolte ih doh mit ime umgeen! (wi wolte ih in (zerzauſen, abſmiren *or*) zurihten! gar leihtlih; one beſwerde; ſonder groſe mühe.
how would i finger him! with a wet finger.

einem einen roten han auf's haus ſezen; ein haus (anſtekken *or*) inn den brand ſtekken.
to fire ones houſe; to ſet ones houſe on fire.

er ſiet es niht vor gut (ratſam *or* genem) an.
he thinks it not fit.

es wird einen ſtreit ſezen; es wird an ein zanken geen.
we ſhall have a ſcolding fit.

ein mann inn alle fätt el gereht.
a man fit for all men.

er weis ſih inn alle poſsen zu ſhikken.
he is fit for any thing.

hab't ir eweren raush ausgeslafen ?
warzu ein igliher (sih wird shikken *or*) geshikt seine shue sind ime (*or* seinen fůsen) gereht.
er ist reise-færtig.
inn der hize ; vor eine weile.
seet zu, dass alles zubereit (*or* zugeshikket) ist das gelt aufgezælet?
wol-an ! streihet uns eins auf ; mahet etwas lustiges.
gefast auf alles.
er hat alle jare einen gefærlihen anstos der krankheit.
si ertappete mih inn einer œffentlihen lůgen.
es treibet si auf enge und seihte œrter.
als ih disen brif zusammen legete.
shafe (einstallen *or*) inn den stall tuen.
er lage den rehten ob;
er legte sih auf's reht.
er will (euh verklagen *or*) sih mit euh in's reht legen.
mann kann inen zu fuse niht beikommen.
di fus-knehte ereileten (*or* ůberlifen) di reiterei.
gleihwol aber ; idenn-

is your drunken fit over.
what every man will be fit for.
his shoes fit his feet.
he is fit for going.
for a fit.
get all (or every thing) fit.
is the money fit ?
come now, strike up and give us a fit.
fitted at all points.
he hath every year an ill fit.
she took me in a flat lye.
it drives them amongst the flats and sands.
as i was folding up this letter.
to fold sheep ; to get sheep up into their folds.
he followed the law i. was a lawyer.
he will follow the law on you.
there is no coming at them on foot.
the foot overtook the horse.
for all that ;

noh; nihts deſto weniger. *nevertheleſs.*
das ſei ferne! da ſei Gott für! *God forbid!*
ſi verliſen ire fanen *they forſook their*
or ſaen ſi mit den rükken an. *colours.*
einen ausfall duen. *to ſally forth.*
laſset ewer ſhænden *leave your giving of*
und ſmæyen unter-wegen. *foul language.*
es wird auskommen; *it will be found*
es wird (kund *or*) ruh- *out.*
bar werden; mann wird dahinter kommen.
warnah ſeet ir euh um? *what do you look for?*
di ſpeiſe war ein wen- *the meat was ſome-*
ig zu gelinde geſalzen. *what to freſh.*
laſset euh's niht ver- *doe not fret your ſelf,*
drüſen, wenn ir verſpilet. *when you looſe.*
ein neuling. *a freſhman.*
über dem fluſse; auf *on the further ſide of*
der anderer ſeiten des fluſses. *the river.*
pakket euh (weg *or*) *get you gone*; *be*
von hinnen; ſhæret *gone*; *get you*
euh fort; geet hinnweg. *hence.*
hæret auf; laſset nah. *have done; give over.*
diſe dinge (gelten gelt, *they are things,*
bringen pfennige ein *that will give*
or) tragen gelt. *money.*
ſi gelten ganz und gar *they give nothing*
nihts. *at all.*
ih will es euh zu- *i will give you my*
ſagen *or* verſprehen. *word.*
es (ſwanete *or*) anete *my heart mis gave*
mir; es ginge mir i'm *it me*; *or*, *it*
gemüte vor; mein herz *gave me in*
ſagte es mir. *my mind.*
i zu weilen; zu zeiten. *ever now and then.*

gelib't's Gott; wenn Gott will. *God willing.*
ih bin durhaus frœlih. *i am full glad.*
des herren (wolſtand, wolweſen *or*) geſundheit iſt mir von herzen lib, *or* erfrewet mih ſere *or* herzlih. *Sir! i am very glad, to ſee you well.*
er iſt verreiſet. *he is gone out of (the) town.*
wa wollet ir hinn geen? *whither are you going?*
wi wird geſpilet? *how goeth the game?*
mahet fort; faret fort; weiter. *goe on; goe to!*
iſt (*or* geet) ſi ſwanger? *goeth (is or proves)*
iſt ſi hoes leibes? *ſhe with child?*
er wird heute (Doctor *or*) zu einen Doctor gemaht. *he goes out Doctor to day.*
ih bin bald vir und ahzig jar alt; ih gee inn das vir und ahzigſte jar; ih bin faſt ein vir- und ahzig jæriger mann; *or* ih bin faſt vir- und ahzig jare meines alters. *i am going on my four ſcore and four.*
ih wolte es euh gleih izo geben. *i was juſt a-going to give it you.*
bei jaren; ſer alt; betaget. *far gone in years.*
er gabe alles (verſpilet *or*) verloren. *he gave all for gone.*
es iſt um mih geſheen; es iſt aus mit mir. *i am a gone man.*
es ſei denn, daſs ir mir (helfet *or*) beiſteet ſoniſt werde ih hinter's lih mih friret. *i ſhall be gone bey ond unleſs you help me. i am cold; i have cold.*
was wolte ih doh ſagen? *what was i going to ſay?*
warzu (dinet *or*) nuz *what is it good (for*

et es? warzu iſt es gut? *or) to? what good does it?*
kœnnet ir es (erweiſen, beweiſen, darduen *or)* ausfüren? *can you make it good?*
nemet es niht übel auf. *take it in good part.*
ih will vor allen ſchaden (gut ſein *or)* ſteen; *i will make good all dammage.*
ih will allen ſchaden gut mahen *or* erſezen.
warhaftig; warlih; gewislih; bei meiner trewe. *in good faith; truth, earneſt; fadneſs.*
ein geſchikter *(or* rüſtiger*)* mann. *a man good at any thing.*
ein gelærter mann. *a good ſcholar.*
mit dem früeſten. *good and early.*
es hat niht gros auf ſih; es hat niht vil zu bedeuten; es iſt wenig daran gelegen; es iſt keine reihs-ſahe. *it is no great matter.*
ih will ſi ausforſchen, ſi mag auh ſtekken wa ſi immer will *or* wolle. *i will find her out, if ſhe be above ground.*
di zu pferde begaben ſih zurükke; di reitereye wihe. *the horſemen gave ground.*
der morgen briht an; es beginnet morgen zu werden. *it growes towards morning.*
der tag briht an; der tag, di naht, der früling, der herbſt kœmmet herbei *or* heran. *it growes near day, night, ſpring, harveſt.*
wære ih nun (ein narr, tummer ſchœps, einfæltiger tropf *or* alberer tœlpel geweſt. *had i been ought but a block-head.*
ſo vil mir (bewuſt *or)* wisſend iſt. *for ought i know; to my knowledge.*
ih kœnne ſeine weiſe *i underſtand his hu-*

(*or* ih weis ſeinen gebrauh) hares-klein *or* inn-und auswendig. — *mour to a hair.*
gee an den galgen! — *goe and be hanged.*
der hanker hole dih! daſs dih (der galgen hole *or*) das rad erſmeiſe, erſlage! — *goe and be hanged.*
diſe rede (trift niht ů-berein *or*) ſtimmet niht zuſammen. — *this tale hangeth not together.*
ſi bleiben niht auf einerlei worte *or* auf einer rede. — *their tales hang not together.*
es iſt (nae bei, niht weit *or*) niht ferne. — *it is hard (or near) at hand; hard by; next by.*
unreht von einem leiden. — *to take wrong at ones hand.*
aus dem ſtege reiſe; alſobalden. — *out of hand.*
ůberhinn; unbedahtſamlih. — *hand over head.*
er iſt der han i'm korbe; er iſt der (meiſter *or*) vornemſte i'm ſpile *or* handel. — *he has the chief hand in it.*
eine vir-ſhrœtige frawe. — *a two-handed woman.*
ſi wird bald (inn di wohen kommen *or*) einkommen. — *ſhe is hard at down-lying.*
einem auf dem fuſse folgen; ſtraks hinter einem her ſein. — *to be hard at ones heeles.*
es hilte hart; es ginge ſwer zu. — *it was a hard (great) matter.*
einer ſo tag und naht ůber den bůhern liget. — *a hard ſtudent; bellua librorum.*
er arbeitet fleiſig. — *he workes hard.*
ir komt mir zu ſtark *or* zu grob; ir ſeid mir ůberlegē. — *you are too hard (or too many) for me.*
ein ſtrenger *or* ſæwerliher wein. — *a hard wine.*
ein dummer kopf zu lærnen. — *one hard to learne.*

ein huf-eiſen.	*an horſe-ſhoe.*
ih bin eilfertig.	*i am in great haſte.*
ir liben leutigen eſset	*good people feed*
wakker drauf und laſs	*heartily, for you*
-et euh's wol ſmækken,	*are all very*
denn ir ſeid mir alle	*wellcome to it.*
ſer angeneme (*or* willkommene) gæſte.	
wir ſeen es wol.	*we find it ſo.*
da hab't ir eins!	*have at you!*
nah ſeinem kopfe *or* ſinne.	*of his own head.*
ſi daten uns dapferen	*they made head a-*
widerſtand.	*gainſt us ſtoutly.*
das herz war mir inn	*my heart was at my*
di (hoſen *or*) knikele gefallen.	*heels.*
auſewendig her-	*to ſay (by heart, or)*
ſagen.	*without book.*
das (land *or*) feld iſt	*the (land or) field is*
unfruhtbar.	*out of heart.*
ſeid (gutes muts *or*)	*come, take a good*
unverzaget?	*heart!*
mein (gehůlf *or*) geſell	*my partner is quite*
iſt ganz verzaget.	*out of heart.*
von herzen gerne; mit	*with all my*
allem willen; ſer gerne.	*heart.*
als ih a'm meiſten zu	*in the heat of my*
(duen *or*) verrihten hatte.	*buſineſs.*
einem den kopf warm	*to put one into*
(*or* heis) mahen.	*a heat.*
leget euh ſelber vor;	*help your ſelves.*
nemet euh ſelbſten hinnaus; greifet ſelbſt zu!	
es will mir niht ein-	*i can not hit on it; i*
fallen; ih kann gar	*can not call it to*
niht drauf kommen; ih	*mind.*
kann mih niht darauf beſinnen *or* bedenken.	

ih kann meinen bruder nirgens antreffen.	*i can not hit on my brother any where.*
ſtoſet euh niht an (den kopf *or*) das haupt.	*doe not hit your head.*
ſi ſind (unterſhidliher meinungen *or*) verſhidener gedanken.	*they doe not hit it.*
ſweiget ſtille; gebet euh zu friden; haltet ewer maul.	*hold your peace; hold your toung.*
ir bleibet (bei *or*) auf ewerer alten weiſe *or* gewonheit.	*you hold on your old wont.*
er leget hand an ſi.	*he layes hold on her.*
di gelegenheit inn aht nemen *or* ergreifen.	*to lay hold of the opportunity.*
wollet ir mih niht geen (*or* zu friden) laſsen?	*will you not hold off your hands?*
das hemd iſt mir nær dann der rokk.	*charity beginnes at home.*
ein rehter bûtermann; ein alter Teutſher.	*a downright honeſt man.*
er iſt (eine gute erlihe haut *or*) ein aufrihtiger kærl *or* tropf.	*he is a good honeſt fellow.*
mein weib iſt (ganz i'm harniſhe *or*) durhaus bœſe.	*my wife is quite off the books.*
er iſt gewiſs genug (ein -gelappet *or*) gefangen.	*he is hookt in, as ſure as can be.*
ih zweifelte (*or* verzweifelte) an dem fride.	*i was out of hope of peace.*
er iſt ganz verzaget;	*he is paſt hope.*
es iſt um in geſheen;	da iſt kein retten.
du hurenſon!	*you ſon of a whore!*
ih bringe es dem herren! der jungefrawen!	*here is to you, Sir or Miſtreſs.*
auf diſes herren (*or* auf diſer frawen, jung-	*to this Gentlemans (or Gentlewomans)*

frawen) gute geſundheit!	*good health!*
Gott geſegne es dem herren! der frawen!	*with all my heart!* der jungfrawen!
komm' ih ůber den hund, ſo komm' ih ůber den ſwanz; entweder alles oder gar nihts.	*i will win the horſe, or looſe the ſaddle.*
ſi ſind ſer ſtark.	*they are of huge force.*
ein ſtein-reiher mann.	*a huge rich man.*
ir hættet ime ſollen durh di finger ſeen.	*you ſhould have humour'd him.*
einen ůbertœbern *or* ůbertœlpeln.	*to runne one down.*
ih wære (bald umgebraht worden *or*) umkommen.	*i had like to be killed.*
mih hongert; ih bin hongerih; ih habe honger.	*i am (an hungred) or hungrie.*
ůber dritthalb ſtunden. vor anderhalb ſtunden.	*two hours and an half hence. an hour and an half agoe.*
ůbel haushalten; ůbel hauſen; ein (bœſer haushalter, verſwænder *or*) faulenzer ſein.	*to be an ill husband; to play the bad husband.*
ir můſset (ſparſam, genawe *or*) beratſam damit umgeen.	*you muſt husband it well.*
einen (poſsen *or*) ſherz daraus mahen.	*to put a thing off with a jeſt.*
er iſt heftig krank worden.	*he is fallen very ill.*
er iſt (*or* liget) krank a'm ſteine, zippergen.	*he is ill of the ſtone, gout.*
es iſt mir niht wol; es iſt mir reht ůbel.	*i am not well; i am very ill.*
Gott lob und dank! ih bin noh zimlih wol auf.	*i am indifferently well, i thank God.*

innvendig, ihnerlih. *on the inside.*
als exempels weise; *as for instance i. e.*
zu m beispile. *for examples sake.*
auf ewer anhalten, an- *at your instance.*
regen, antreiben, anmanen, ansuhe, geheis.
ih bitte euh hœhlih; *I intreat you of all*
ih will euh freundlih ersuht haben. *love.*
er ist nihte (zu erbitt- *there is no intreat-*
en *or*) n't bitten zu *ing of him; he*
bewœgen; es hülfet *is not to be in-*
kein bitten non hœren *treated at*
bei ime. *all.*
si lasen sih (gar leht- *little intreating ser-*
lih erbitten *or*) ire *ves (or will serve) to*
kappen niht zerreisen *keep them,*
um zu verbleiben *or* zu verwarten.
der henker hole seinen *hang his journieman*
(werk-) geselle *or* arbeiten *or work man!*
si gabe es mir auf-zu *she give it me to keep*
heben *or* zu verwaren. *or to lay it by.*
der himmel henget in- *they keep Christ-*
en allezeit voller geig- *mas all the*
en; si leben immer- *year long.*
fort i'm vollen fause und smause; es
ist immer (hohzeit *or*) kirmesse mit inen.
si hælt niht farbe. *she does not keep to eb.*
was vor ein shiff ist *what kind of ship*
das ewere? *is yours?*
er stellet sih freundlih *he is kind to*
gegen mih. *me.*
er ist ein leutseliger *he is a kind (Gen-*
(or freundlicher mann. *tleman or) man.*
si sind inen nihts (bœ- *they know nothing*
ses) bewust. *by them selves.*

wenn ih ſi ſee, ſo kenne ih ſi; ih kenne ſi von geſite. — *i know her by ſight.*

ih will euh (dih) læren, was es ſei, ſeinen herren (meiſter) betrügen. — *i will make you know, what it is to cousin your maſter.*

er wird euh (zu bodem *or*) darnider ſlagen *or* ſmeiſen. — *he will knock you down.*

er tribe mit ir unzuht. — *he knocked her.*

es iſt der mûe wert; es verlonet di mûe. — *it is worth the (while or) labour.*

er verwûſtete alles, wa er nur hinn kame; er verherete und verzerte was er nur antrafe. — *he lay'd all waſte, where he came.*

ſlif-*or* halb-ſweſter. } ſwægerin. } *ſiſter* } *in law.*

ſlif-*or* halb-bruder. } ſwager. } *brother* } *in law.*

ſlif-vater. } ſwiger-vater. } *father* } *in law.*

ſlif-mutter. } ſwiger-mutter. } *mother* } *in law.*

ir ſollet (vortanzen *or*) den vorreyen haben. — *you ſhall lead the dance.*

ih lernete es von wort zu worte auswendig. — *i learnt it every word without book.*

der text lautet von wort zu wort alſo. — *the text runnes word by (or for) word thus.*

ih weis zuvor wol, was vor ein leihtfertiger vogel (*or* ſhelm) ir ſeid; *or* was du vor ein (galgenſwengel *or*) galgen-vogel biſt. — *i am not to learn, what a ſad rogue (baſe knave, villain, or rascal) you are.*

wenn ir derweile (*or* zeit) habet; i'm falle daſs ir mûſig ſeid. — *if you be at leaſure.*

wenn es meine geſhæf- *if my occaſions will*
te (verrihtungen) wer *give me leave.*
-den (*or* wollen) zulaſsen, *or* vergœnnen.
feyeret eine zeit-lang, *leave work for awhile.*
henget di arbeit eine weile an den nagel.
er iſset alles rein auf; *he leaves not manners in the diſh.*
er friſset alles hinnein.
greifet (*or* langet) ein *lend me your hand*
wenig zu. *a little.*
helfet mir ein *lend me your help*
wenig. *a little.*
endlihen, nahdeme es *at length.*
lange gewæret hatte; *or* nah viler zeit.
er liget alleine. *he lyes by himſelf.*
einem auf den dinſt *to lye in wait for*
warten; auf einen lauren. *one.*
wann ih (lebe *or*) das *if God ſend life,*
leben habe; wa mir *health.*
Gott das leben gœnnet, gibet, verleyet.
wenn ih auh ſterben *if my life ſhould ly*
(*or* ob ih ſhon mein leben verliren ſolte. *on it.*
ih ſeze mein leben zu'm *i lay my life on it.*
pfande; ih will mein leben verloren haben.
er ſtige von dem wag- *he lighted from the*
en. *charriot.*
von dem pferde ſteig- *to light off from his*
en. *horſe.*
er koſtete es ein klein *he took a light taſte*
wenig; er ſmakkerte nur daran. *of it.*
er læſset di hænde *he is a light-fingered fellow.*
klæben.
inn den wind ſlagen; *to think light of--*
zu einem ore ein-und *or to ſet light by;*
zu'm anderen widerum *to make light of;*

laſsen aus-geen; vor nihts ahten.
light reckoning (or account) of.

ir gabet es ime unter den fuſs; ir halfet im auf di hane; ir brahtet in auf di ſprünge.
you lighted him the way to.

wi gefællet euh diſes?
how doe you like that?

es gefæll't mir gar wol.
i like it very well.

ih habe mih unterhalten laſsen.
i have liſted my ſelf for a ſoldier.

inn der kürze; inn kurzem; inn kurzer zeit.
ere long; a little while after.

zupfet euh bei ewer naſen; greifet inn eweren boſem; keret vor ewerer düre.
look to your ſelf; look to your own home.

mann liet ſih ſer nah euh um; ſi warten ewerer mit verlangen.
there is much look for of you.

ſo war ih lebe; ſo gewiſs als ih das leben habe; ih will niht leben.
as i live.

ih will niht geſund von der ſtelle geen; ih will niht erlih ſein.
would i might never live; if &c.

Gott ſpare in geſund! Gott laſse in lange leben! Gott erhalten in bei langem leben! Gott gebe, daſs er lange lebe!
God ſend he live long! God ſend him long to live!

ſi müſsen ſih von dem bloſen honige erhalten; ſi haben ſonſt nihts als honig zu eſſen.
they are fain to live all upon honey.

wol verwäret und verſloſsen ſein.
to be under lock and key.

was iſſet di jungfer gerne?
what meat doe you love, Madam?

will ſi einen flügel haben ? *are you for a wing ?*

ih habe weder ſtern noh glükk ? *i have no luck at all.*

er ſlæget ſein waſser ab ; er piſſet ; er ſeihet ; er brunſet. *he makes water ; he piſſeth.*

ih zweifele niht ; ih trage keinen zweifel. *i make no queſtion or doubt.*

er bildet ime etwas ein ; er dünket ſih was zu ſein. *he makes much of him ſelf.*

er lœſete gelt daraus. *he made money at it.*

ir habet heute wakker darauf gearbeitet ; ir hab't euh's diſen tag *you have made a good dayes-work on it.*

inn ekerer arbeit laſsen ſawer werden.

er rihtete (*or* ſtellete) ir ein leih-begængniſs an ; er liſe ſi zu'r erden beſtatten. *he made a funerall for her.*

er hat ſein hab und gut (durh di gurgel gejaget , verſlukket , verpraſet , verſlampampet , verfaulenzet *or*) durhgebraht. *he hath made away bin eſſate.*

er halfe ime ſelbſt vo'm brote ; er name ime ſelbſt das leben ; er brahte ſih ſelber um. *he made away him ſelf.*

hofmeiſter ! laſset ime etwas zu eſsen und zu trinken geben. *ſteward ! make him eate and drinke.*

ih will mih bei euh ſhon bezalet mahen. *i will make you pay me.*

was mein mund redet, das meinet das herz. *my toung and heart are twins.*

es iſt auſer allem zweifel. *it hath no manner of doubt.*

idwede tugend beſteet gewiſs:r maſsen inn drei ſtükken.
all vertue in a manner ſtandeth in three points.

es iſt um mein leben faſt geſheen.
my life is in a manner done.

ein ſolher mann (*or* menſh) iſt er.
this is the manner of the man.

was vor ein mann war er?
what manner of man was he?

ſi hat freyers-gedanken; ſi geet mit heiraten um.
ſhe hath a mind to marrie.

ih will dir fort helfen; ih will dir beine (fůſse) mahen.
i will make you (thee) runne.

er verjagete (*or* jagte) ſi alle.
he made them all runne.

es kümmert mih nihts; es geet mih nihts an; ih frage nihts darnah.
i make it all a matter; it matters me not; i doe not matter it.

ungefær ſehs (ſex) meilen; ungefær hundert reihstaler, u. ſ. f. a.
a matter of ſix miles; a matter of five and twentie pound ſterling &c.

bei mannes gedenken.
ſince man could mean.

ei freilih! gar gewiſs.
by all means.

bei leibe niht.
by no means.

vermittelſt deſsen; hidurh.
by that means.

durh mih; durh meine hůlfe.
by my means.

arme (*or* geringe, unvermœgende) leutgen.
men of ſmall means.

wadurh? wamit? auf was weiſe *or* wege? welher geſtalt?
by what means?

eine maſe halten.
to keep a mean.

innzwiſhen; unterdeſs-
in the mean time,

en ; unter wærender zeit ; mittler weile. *while , ſpace , ſeaſon.*

ein kriges-ſhiff (von ſibenzig ſtůkken *or*) ſibenzig geſhůze fůrend. *a man of warr mounted with three ſcore gunnes and ten.*

ůber (di maſe *or*) alle maſe aufwenden. *to ſpend beyond (all) meaſure.*

ůber alle di maſe (*or* auſer maſen) zornig. *angry out of all meaſure.*

mittelmæſig ; mit maſen. *in meaſure.*

einziger (*or* etliher) maſen. *in a (or, in ſome) meaſure.*

guten teils ; faſt alle ; gemeiniglih ; meiſtens. *in a very great meaſure.*

menget euh niht unter ſi. *doe not you meddle with them.*

habe ih (des eweren *or*) von dem eweren etwas angeriret *or* angegriffen? *have i meddled with any thing of yours ?*

es iſt billih und reht. *it is meet.*

es ſteet Fůrſten niht an *or* zu. *it is not meet for Princes.*

ih werde in ſhon einmal dafůr bekommen *or* bezalen. *i ſhall meet with him one time or other.*

nemet ewere geſundheit inn aht. *mind your health.*

hœret ir drauf? gebet ir ahtung darauf ? merket ir auf ? *doe you mind?*

ih bin diſer (*or* ewerer) meinung. *i am of that (or of your) mind.*

ſeine gedanken offenbaren ; ſeine meinung entdekken *or* ſagen. *to ſpeake his mind.*

er hat ſeines herzens *he hath*

wunsh *or* verlangen.	*his mind.*
er ist (anders gesinnet, *or*) anderer meinung.	*he is of an other mind.*
er hatte einen narren an disem weibe gefressen.	*he had a very great mind to this wife.*
es ist seiner tohter unrihtig gangen,	*his daughter hath miscarried.*
lasset uns ein wenig frishe luft shœpfen.	*let us take a mouthfull of fresh aire.*
ih habe all da nihts verloren *or* nihts zu suhen.	*they neither sow nor mowe for me there.*
mündlih *or* mündlihen.	*by word of mouth.*
was ir einbrokket, das müsset ir ausessen.	*what you sow, that you must mow.*
er strekket alle seine maht und kraft (*or* stærke) dran; er arbeitet mit hændē u. füsen.	*he laboures tooth and nail.*
mann trawet euh nirgends *or* auf keiner seiten.	*you are trusted on neither side.*
er legete (*or* zalete) ime (das pare gelt *or*) das gelt par auf den tish *or* inn di hand.	*he paid the money down upon the nail.*
eingesalzen ründ-fleish.	*poudred beef.*
ein jüngling (*or* jung -er kærl) mit namen Willhelm.	*a youngman William by name.*
gegen (*or* auf den) abend; auf di naht soll es færtig sein.	*i will get it done by night.*
næhtliher weile; des nahts.	*by night; in the night time.*
gestern waren es aht tage, als das kind getaufet wurde.	*yesterday it was a sen-night, when the child was christened.*

vor virzeen tagen. *a fortnight ago.*
morgen über aht tage; *to morrow cum se'n-*
über virzeen tage. *night; cum fortnight.*
vorsezlih; von freyen *for the nonce; on*
stükken; mit fleise. *purpose.*
er will euh niht haben; *he will have none*
er begeret ewer niht. *of you.*
di shuld ist niht mein. *it is none of my fault.*
was newes? nihts *what newes? none*
niht. *at all.*
umsonst; frei; für *for nothing; at*
nihts. *free cost.*
ir sollet keinen narren *you shall not make a*
(aus mir maheu *or*) an *fool of me for*
mir haben für nihts und umsonst. *nought.*
es ist nihts gutes an den *the singleder is*
rädgens-fürer. *naught.*
ih brauhe; (bedarf *or* *i have occasion for*
habe nötig) mein gelt. *my money.*
das alter *or* altertum. *the old age.*
vor langen jaren. *in old time.*
ih rihte mih nah der *i am for the old*
alten welt. *way.*
zu fusse oder zu *on foot or on horse-*
pferde. *back.*
mit einem; auf ein- *all under one;*
mal; *or* zugleih. *at once.*
ih will euh wider (ver- *i will set you at one*
tragen, vereinigen *or*) eins mahen. *again.*
ih erzoge si (kleine *or*) *i brought her up as a*
da si noh (klein *or*) jung ware. *little one.*
ih konte niht überall *i could not be here*
auf ein mal (*or* zu *and there and all*
gleih) sein. *at once.*

ih will es ſo deutlih für -ſtellen, daſs ir gedenken ſollet; als ob ir es ſelbſten ſæet.

i will lay it open, as if you ſaw it.

duet *(or* nemet) das ſtah -el-ſwein und den zaun -kœnig vor meinen augen hinn weg.

take away the hedge -hogg and the hedge -ſparrow from before my eyes.

ih will ſeine tükkgen (ſhelmerei *or* ſhelm-ſtükkgen) offenbaren, *or* offenbar mahen.

i will lay open his villany.

ein eid (duen, ſwœren *or)* ablegen.

to take an oath.

er muſte ſwœren.

he was put to his oath.

etwas eidlih zuſagen; einen mit einem eide verſihern.

to give one ſecurity by oath.

wollet ir ein geiſtliher werden? nein, ih werde keiner werden.

will you goe into orders? no, i ſhall not.

ir irret; ir fæilet; ir verirret euh.

you are out or out of the ſtory; that is your miſtake.

weit gefæilet; hinten-aus tragen di bauren di ſpise.

you are quite out or quite from the market.

einen i'n laufen *or* nennen, mit dem verſtande *or* wize u. ſ. f. übertreffen.

to outgoe or outrunne one, to outwit one &c.

pakket euh von hinnen *or* geet weg; ſhæret euh fort.

pack hence and be gone.

eine treppe, eine karte, eine orgel, eine ſhære, ein blaſe-balg, ein kræuſel-eiſen, eine zange, u. ſ. f. a.

a { *ſtairs, cards, organs, ſciſſars, bellowes, curling-irons, tonges &c.* } *pair of*

ih wolte liber in's gras beiſen. *i had rather die.*
ih will liber ſterben *or* mih laſsen umbringen. *i will part with my life firſt.*
iſt diſes erlih (aufrihtig *or* redlih) gehandelt, wenn mann einem unſchuldigen fremdlinge gewalt und unreht duet? *is this an honeſt mans part, to abuſe an innocent ſtranger?*
das tuet kein (rehtſchaffener *or*) erliber mann; *this is no honeſt mans part; ſure none but a villain would do this.*
dis kommet einem redlihen manne niht zu; diſes ſteet keinem erlihen kærl an, ein neid-hæmmel.
Gott verleye ir eine ſanfte rue *or* einen ſeligen ſlaf! Gott troeſte ſi *or* ire ſeler mer dann zu oft, zu vil malen. *God's peace be with her! God reſt her ſoul! an envious dog. over often.*
ein (ſtükk *or*) werk, darauf vil müe und fleis gewandt iſt worden. *a ſtudied piece.*
ruffet Gott den allmæhtigen an, ſo wird er ſih ewer erbarmen. *call upon God allmighty, and he will (take or) have pity on you, or pity you.*
laſset uns der karten ſpilen. *let us play at cards.*
wer (ſlæget aus *or*) ſpilet aus? *who playes firſt?*
was ſoll ein ſpil gelten? um was wollen wir ſpilen? was wollen wir auffezen? was ſoll auf dem ſpile ſteen? *what will you (or ſhall we) play for?*
was für (ſprünge *or*) aufzüge und poſsen würde er mir gemaht haben! *what pranks would he have play'd me!*

er stilet als ein rab *or* naht-rab.	*he playes the thief most sadly.*
ir narret euh (*or* ir sherzet) mit mir; ir treibet (sherz *or*) narren-possen mit mir.	*you play the fool with me.*
es gefællet mir; ih habe (meine lust *or*) gefallen daran *or* damit.	*i am pleased with it; it pleaseth me.*
was belibt dem herren? der herr sage was ime belibe.	*Sir, your pleasure? what is it you want, Sir?*
ih will dem Musen-fleisse (*or* dem studiren) nahfolgen.	*i will ply my book.*
rudert wakker drauf! einem mit dem (drunke *or*) drinken zusezen.	*ply your ores! to ply one with cups.*
wir müssen fortmahen *or* ellen.	*we must ply us; we must make haste.*
ermannet (*or* ermundert) euh!	*pluck up your spirits!*
reiset (*or* duet) di sih mit einander beisenden hæne vonsammen.	*pluck asunder the fighting cocks.*
lasset mih doh euh erbitten; lasset meine bitte statt finden.	*let me prevail with you.*
mein pferd ist vernagelt.	*a nail doeth prick my horse.*
es ist ein vortrefliher mann aus im worden.	*he proveth an excellent man.*
vor izo; izo gegenwærtig; zu gegenwærtiger zeit; vor dises mal.	*at present; at this present, for the present.*
er hat wakker geræist und sih wol versuhet.	*he is a great traveller indeed.*

er zoge ſeinen hals ein. *he pull'd in his neck.*
er (es) ſhikket ſih inn eweren kram; er (es iſt) *or* dinet vor euh *or* vor eweren kram. *he (it) is for your purpoſe.*
es ræumet ſih niht; es ſhikket ſih wi eine fauſt auf's auge. *it is to no purpoſe.*
es iſt auf das (æuſerſte *or*) hœhſte kommen. *it is come to the laſt puſh.*
weiſet ſi ab; laſset ſi laufen. *put her off.*
nemet den mantel um. *put on the cloak.*
er kleidet ſi von dem fuſse auf (*or* vo'm haupte biſs zu'n fûſsen) inn ſeide. *he puts her into ſilk from the top to the bottome.*
puzet das liht aus, wann ir euh habet ausgezogen. *put out the candle, when you have put off your garments.*
etwas aufzeihenen *or* aufſihreiben. *to put a thing in writing.*
ein buh ausgeen laſsen. *to put forth a book.*
di ſhiffe laufen inn di ſee; di ſhiffe geen zu'r ſee. *the ſhips put to ſea.*
ir wurdet ûbergangen *or* auſen-gelaſsen. *you were put by.*
bringet ſi um. *put them to death.*
bûrgen ſtellen; verſihерung tuen. *to put in ſureties or ſecuritie.*
gelt auf zinſe legen *or*, ausleyen. *to put money to uſe.*
er ſtekket ſein ſwert ein *or* inn di ſheide. *he puts up his ſword.*
ih begere diſes niht von euh. *i ſhall not put you to that.*
œffentlih vor aller welt. *in the open face of the whole world.*

einen gleihſam auf den hænden tragen, d. i. herz-inniglih liben.

to put one (as if it were) in his boſom i. e. to love moſt affectionately.

ih weis weder aus noh ein; ih binn inn der groeſten not *or* hœhſten gefar; ih ſtekke zwiſhen dûre und angel; ih habe den wolf bei den oren.

i am in a quandary.

es iſt inen das leben geſhenket worden.

they have quarter given them.

wa liget ir zu'r herber-ge? war haltet ir euh auf? wa wonet ir? nun ſo ſind wir einander gleih *or* nihts ſhuldig.

where is your quarter? now then we are even or quit.

ſi wihen zurûkke; ſi hilten niht fuſs *or* grund.

they did quit their ground.

gedenket ir frei (aus-zugeen *or* los zukommen? ih will es euh eindringen *or* gedenken.

doe you think, you ſhall be quit? i ſhall cry quit with you.

bevor ih ganz ausgeredet hatte.

before i had done quite ſpeaking.

wi hoh haltet ir es? wi teuer wollet ir's geben?

what rate ſet you on it?

ſi halten es hoh; vor (*or* um) einen groſen preis.

they hold it at a huge rate.

einen mit ſharfen wort-en wol (*or* derb) abſheweren.

to rate one ſoundly.

einen bogen ſhuſs weit.

within reach of dart.

ſi leſen alles (heimlih *or*) ſahte; ſi leſen kein wort laut.

they read all to themſelves.

er mœhte vor dorſt ver-ſmahten *or* vergeen.

he is readie to die for thirſt.

ſplitter-nakket; mutter-nakket.

ſtark naked.

ih wolte dises noh ein	*i would doe this ra-*
mal so lib *(or* gerne)	duen. *ther by half.*
ih ahte es wenig.	*i reckon little of it.*
ih frage nihts nah ir;	*i make no reckoning*
ih verahte si.	*of her.*
ir werdet niht (wider	*you will not recover*
-um gesund werden *or*)	*scil. your health.*
zu voriger gesundheit gelangen *or* gerat n.	
wird es auh wol einer	*will any refuse*
abslagen *or* sih dessen	wæigern? *it.*
ih will euh nihts ver-	*i will refuse you*
sagen *or* abslagen.	*nothing.*
ih will es mit euh an-	*i will refuse you at*
nemen auf was weise ir	begeret. *nothing.*
ei liber! grůsset si von	*pray! remember me*
wegen meiner eren-	*to her; present my*
dinstlih; vermeldet ir	*service to her.*
(meinen eren-gruss *or*)	meine erendinste
es (ist *or*) steet ime we-	*he (or it) is past re-*
der zu raten noh zu	*medie; there is no*
helfen; es ist damit gesheen.	*remedie.*
hab't ir es bei euh	*are you resolved*
beslossen?	*on it?*
benemet mir disen	*resolve me this*
zweifel; befreyet mih	dises zweifels. *doubt.*
wir konten weder rast	*we could take no rest*
-en noh ruen inn der	*all the rest of*
ůbrigen zeit der naht.	*the night.*
erstlih (erstens, zu'm	*at first they make a*
ersten, i'm anfange,	*stand, then they*
anfænglih) steen si, dar	*retreat.*
nah so begeben si sih	widerum zurůkke.
zu'm abzuge blasen.	*to sound a retreat.*
antworten.	*to returne an answer.*

ih kann ſeiner niht los werden; ih kann mih ſeiner niht entſlagen, entæuſern, entbrehen.
i can not be rid of him.

er fure auf einer kutſhen.
he did ride in a coatch.

er lage vor anker.
he rode at anchor.

ein koſtbarer ring.
a rich ring.

ſi ſtanden alle inn ein -em kræiſe.
they ſtood all in a ring.

meine oren (gellen *or*) klingen mir.
my ears ring with noiſe.

das glokken-gelæut.
the ringing of the bells.

gleih wenn di vœgel auffliegen wollen
juſt when the birds are going to riſe.

mit der ſonnen æufgange.
by ſun-riſe.

der wind beganne ſih zu erhœben.
the wind begunne to riſe.

ir herſhet ganz alleine.
you rule all by your ſelf.

folget meinem rate.
be ruled by me.

wi es pfleget her-zu ge -en; der welt lauf und gewonheit nah.
as the world rules.

er wird nærriſh darüber; das mahet in (toll *or* tœriht.
that makes him run mad.

ih frage niht ein ſnipp -gen *or* einen ſtro-halm nah ir.
i care not a ruſh for her.

es iſt niht einen kwark (pfifferling *or* drekk) wert.
it is not worth a (pinn) ruſh.

eine ſtatt plündern.
to ſack (or ranſack) a town.

dem ſekke iſt kein wein gleih.
no wine to ſack.

wi (*or* warum) ſeid ir ſo traurig? betrübt? beſtürzt?
why are you (or what makes you) ſo (melancholy or) ſad?

es iſt ein jammer und elend; es iſt ein erbærmlih-elendes ding.	*it is a ſad thing.*
ir kinder! wenn ir ſatt ſeid; (*or* genung geſsẽ habt;) ſo ſtehet auf vo'm tiſhe.	*children, when you have dined, riſe from the table.*
ih will euh diſer mũe ſiberhœben.	*i will ſave you that labour.*
biſs auf den winter auf-hœben.	*to ſave till winter.*
wa ih nur niht ſhaden (damit *or*) dabei leide!	*ſo i can but ſave by it.*
der lezte one einen, one zweye u. ſ. f. a.	*the laſt but (ſave or except) one, two &c.*
es ware nimann (*or* weder hund noh kaze) bei mir, als ein klein altes (mũttergen *or*) weibgen.	*there was no creature with me ſave one little old woman.*
ſih mit der fluht retten.	*to ſave him ſelf by flight.*
bleibet *or* wartet, ſag' ih.	*ſtay, i ſay.*
ſo ginge di gemeine rede; das geſhrei ware.	*ſo it was ſay'd or reported.*
ei! iſt es war?	*ſay you ſo?*
es iſt niht anders, als wi ih ſage.	*yes in deed doe i ſay ſo.*
alle di ſhiffe ſteen ſegel-fertig.	*all the ſhips are under ſayl.*
wir haben ſolher bũrger wenig *or* niht vil.	*we are very ſcarce of ſuch Citizens.*
waran (*or* warauf) er kaum gedahte; welhes	*which he ſcarce thought of.*
er ime ſwerlih einbildete	*or* træumen liſe.
er brœnnet vor zorn.	*he is fire and tow.*
ir waret kaum (gegang	*you were ſcarce gone*

-en *or*) hinnweg, ſo kame ih.
but (i. e. before) i came.

ſhreibet es mir an; ſezet es an meine rehnunge *or* zehe; rehnet es mir an *or* zu.
put it upon my ſcore or account.

auf ewere verantwort -ung.
upon your ſcore or account.

di zehe *or* rehnung bezalen.
to clear (or, to pay off) the ſcore.

ir ſeid zu'm wenigſten drei und neinzig jar alt *or* ein drei-und neinziger.
you are four ſcore and thirteen years old at leaſt.

unſerer freundſhaft halber; von wegen unſerer freindſhaft.
upon the ſcore of our freindſhip.

ſiben jare nahdeme er das bürger-meiſteramt zu dem andern male gefüret hatte.
ſeven years after his ſecond Conſulſhip.

er weihet nimanne an wiſsenſhaft; er gibet keinem menſhen etwas an gelærigkeit nah.
he is ſecond to none for learning.

wenn not vor handen *or* vorfællet, daſs ir mir (beiſteet, beiſtand leiſtet *or*) beiſpringet.
to ſecond me, if need be.

er vertrawete ir alle heimligkeiten.
he truſted her with all ſecrets.

er kann nihts verſweigen *or* heimlih und verborgen halten.
he can keep no ſecret; he is not able to keep a ſecret.

er iſt ſein geheimer rat; er weis alle ſeine heimligkeiten.
he is one of the ſecret Cabal; he is privy to all his ſecrets.

es konte niht ſo gar verſwigen bleiben.
it could not be ſmothered up in ſecret.

der herr ſize an ſeinem orte ſtill! er bleibe ſizend. *ſit ſtill or keep your ſeat, Sir!*

di frawe ſprehe uns doh einmal zu. *pray come and ſee us, Madam.*

ih werde es einmal duen, ee ir euh deſſen vorſeet. *that i ſhall one of theſe dayes, unawares.*

wi kœmm't es, *or* was iſt di urſahe, daſs ir weder heute noh morgen uns beſuhen kœnnet? *what is the matter, that you can not ſee us to day nor to mor-row neither?*

hůlfe ſuhen; ſih nah bei -ſtand umſeen *or* umtuen. *to ſeek for aid, help, aſſiſtance.*

wi dewer geb't ir dis? *how ſell you this?*

was wollet (*or* wi vil wollet) ir dafůr haben? *what doe you ſell that?*

es hůlfet (ime *or*) in nihts; er iſt deſſen nihtes gebeſſert. *it ſignifyes nothing to him; he is never the better for that.*

das geringſte ding iſt genug fůr mih. *any thing, never ſo ſmall a matter, will ſerve me.*

er dinet dem kœnige zu fuſse. *he ſerves the King on foot.*

wollet ir mir aufwarten (*or* auf-) dinen? *will you ſerve me?*

traget eſsen auf. *ſerve up meat.*

es dinet (es iſt dinlih *or* gut) zu viler arznei. *it ſerveth for many medicines.*

er hat ein gutes (*or* genugſames) auskommen. *he hath enough to ſerve his turn.*

ſo vil als von nœten iſt (*or* nœtig) ſein wird. *as much as will ſerve the turn.*

ſhenke mir zu trinken ein! *fill me ſome drink!*

ih habe an einem we- *a little will*
nigen genug. *ſerve me.*
eines ſtelle vertreten. *to ſerve in ones turn.*
es iſt euh gar reht ge- *you are right enough*
ſheen *or* widerfaren ; *ſerved.*
mann hat euh (reht getan *or*) wol bezalet.
meine augen legen mir *my ſight ſerves me*
ab *or* ih hab' ein blœdes geſiht. *not.*
gebet euh zu friden. *ſet your heart at reſt.*
der wind war gut. *the wind ſerved.*
ſpilet ir mir ſo mit ? *doe you ſerve me ſo ?*
ih hilte deſto mer *i ſet the more by*
auf ſi. *her or by them.*
er bildet ime zu vil ein; *he ſets too much by*
er træget di naſe zu hoh. *him ſelf.*
ſi hezen uns (an *or*) *they ſet us together*
zuſammen. *by the ears.*
gering ſhætzen. *to ſet light by.*
es iſt mir leid, daſs ir *i am ſorry, you have*
euh einen ſolhen mann *ſet ſuch a man*
zu'm feinde gemaht habet. *againſt you.*
wer reizet euh an ? *who ſets you on ?*
oben auf der treppen. *at the ſtairs head.*
vor ſih ſelbſten arbeit- *to ſet up a trade for*
en *or* eine handirung anfangen. *himſelf.*
er fluge einen lah (*or* *he ſet up*
ein gelæhter) auf. *a laughter.*
ein geſhrei (anrihten, *to ſet up a*
anfangen *or*) erwekken. *cry.*
er befleifiget ſih allen *he ſets him ſelf to*
zu gefallen. *pleaſe all.*
feil (*or* zu verkaufen) ſein. *to be ſet to ſale.*
ſi brüſtet ſih auf; ſi *ſhe ſets her ſelf*
puzet ſih heraus. *out.*

einem arbeit geben ; *to ſet one to work.*
einen (inn di *or*) zu'r arbeit ſtellen *or* ſezen. *a ſet ſpeech.*
eine vorbedahte rede.
einen frei (mahen *or*) ſtellen. *to ſet one free or at liberty.*
mahet (*or* duet) das fenſter-gůkkergen auf! *ſet open the window or the caſement!*
ſi rihten korn-hæuſer auf *or* an. *they ſet up magaziues.*
wenn geet ire reiſe fort? wenn wollen ſi auf ſein? wenn werden ſi ſih aufmahen? *when are they ſetting out or forward?*
laſet imann nahfragē. *ſet one body to enquire.*
ſih bemůen einen andern zu verderben. *to ſet him ſelf to ruin one.*
hunde auf einen hezen; einen mit hunden hezen *or* jagen. *to ſet dogges on one.*
ſih zu dinſte begeben. *to put himſelf to ſervice.*
ſi lahte, daſs ir der ganze leib wakkelte. *ſhe ſhaked her ſides and laughed.*
habt ir denn ganz und gar keine ſham bei euh? *have you no ſhame at all in you?*
er ſhewet und ſhæmet ſih vor nihts; er hat das ſham-hůtgen abgezogen. *he never ſhames for any thing; he has ſwal-lowed the ſhame and druuk after it.*
es ſheinet (*or* es læſset ſih anſeen,) als ob es (eine Inſul *or*) ein eiland wære. *it ſhewes like an iſle or iland.*
dem anſeen nah eine ſtattlihe ſhifs-růſtung. *a gallant navy in ſhew.*
er bulete um ſi. *he ſhewed love to her.*
nah der larven (*or* unbedahtſamlih) beten. *to ſay prayers by rote.*

wůtet (*or* tobet) liber	*ſhew your ſpleen u-*
wider mih, dann u. ſ. f.	*ther upon me, than &c.*
God ſhůze (beware	*God ſhield you from*
or behůte) euh vor aller gefar!	*all danger!*
da hůlfet nihts dafůr;	*there is no ſhift for*
es wird nihts anders	*it; there is no ſhift to*
daraus; es kann niht	*be made; i can no way*
anders ſein; ih kan's niht ændern.	*ſhift it.*
es iſt nur ein einzig-	*there is but one*
es mittel wider u. ſ. f.	*ſhift for &c.*
ir ſeid verlorben *or* es	*you are undone, ex-*
iſt aus mit euh, es ſei	*cept you can find*
denn, daſs ir euh auf	*out ſome*
ein mittel beſinnet *or* bedenket.	*ſhift.*
ih will mih ſelbſt vor-	*i will now goe ſhift*
ſorgen *or* hinbringen.	*for my ſelf.*
ziet euh anderſt an.	*ſhift your cloths.*
ziet euh weis an.	*ſhift your linnen.*
er behalfe ſih armſel-	*he made a poor (or*
ig; er brahte ſih elend-	*hard) ſhift to*
iglih (hinn *or*) durh.	*live.*
weil mann ſi nimanne	*becauſe they can ſhift*
(aufbůrden, auftring-	*her off to no body elſe*
en, aufhængen *or*) an-	*they come to*
hengen kann, ſo kommen ſi zu mir.	*me.*
eine ſahe, di er erbar-	*a buſineſs, which*
keit halber niht (wol *or*)	*he can with no*
fůglih (abſlagen, aus-	*credit ſhift*
ſlagen *or*) verſagen kann.	*off.*
teilet (*or* deilet) es.	*ſhift (i. e. divide) it.*
er ſpriht di wœrter	*he ſpeakes ſhort.*
nur halb aus; er mahet	nur halbe worte.
er hælt es mit mir; er	*he ſideth with me;*
iſt auf meiner ſeiten.	*he is on my ſide.*

an (*or* neben) dem wege. *by the wayes side.*
an dem ufer des fluſses. *by the rivers side.*
auf (*or* an) beiden ſeit -en. *on both sides; on either side.*
er entwiſhete (*or* entkame) den wæhtern. *he gave the watchmen the ſlip.*
er ſlife ein an dem rande des waſsers. *he fell a-ſleep by the bank.*
er bemůet ſih, ſo vil ime moeglih, das hals -band (*or* hals-eiſen) herunter zu krigen. *he does what he can, to ſlip his collar.*
klein gelt; nah-bir; ein geringes ding *or* eine ſlehte ſahe. *ſmall money; ſmall beer; a ſmall matter.*
ſi merket (*or* koemt hinter) den poſsen. *ſhe ſmelleth out the plot.*
ih rohe den braten bald. *i quickly ſmelt it out.*
es betrůbet mih, wenn ih es hoere. *i am ſorry to hear it.*
es jammert mih ewer. *i am ſorry for you.*
es iſt mir leid. *i am ſorry for it.*
er hat di hoerner (verſtoſsen, abgeſtoſsen *or*) abgelaufen. *his wild oats are ſown.*
ſtreit erwekken; zank anrihten; uneinigkeit mahen. *to ſow ſtrifes or diſſenſions.*
unter (*or* binnen) zwan -zig jaren; inn anderthalb ſtunden. *by the ſpace of twenty years; or, of an hour and a half.*
pfize naſs; ſo naſs als eine gebadete maus. *as wet as muck, or as a drowned mouſe.*
überflůſig genug. *enough and to ſpare.*
ſhonet ewer ein wenig. *ſpare your ſelf a little.*
unten an der troppen. *at the ſtairs foot.*

ih kann es niht(entberen, miſsen *or*)entraten.	*i can not ſpare (or, be without) it.*
es geet uns wol von der hand *or* von ſtatten.	*it ſpeeds well under our hand.*
redet laut; duet das maul auf; duet den brei aus dem munde.	*ſpeak out; ſpeak loud.*
ir habt (ir genung angehænget *or*) auf ſi gewand; ſi koſtet euh genug.	*you ſpent a good deal on her.*
ſi brahten di zeit mit zaudern zu.	*they ſpun out the time with lingering.*
euh allen zu'm poſsen *or* zu wider.	*in ſpite (ſpight) of you all.*
wann diſes niht geſhimpfet iſt (*or* heiſt) ſo weis ih's niht.	*if this be not ſpite, i know not what is.*
wider iren willen und dank.	*in ſpite of her (their) teeth.*
es mahet unſere zæne ſtumpf.	*it ſets our teeth on (an) edge.*
einen beklekken *or* be-tropfen; einem ein klæppgen anhængen *or* poſsen beweiſen.	*to drop a ſpot upon one.*
diſes unglükk wird überhand nemen.	*this miſchief will ſpread farther.*
über hals u. kopf eilen.	*to be upon the ſpur.*
wi ſteen wir zu ſammen?	*how goeth the ſquare?*
was ſind wir ein ander ſhuldig?	*how goes the ſquare with you and me?*
mahet es vir-ekkig.	*bring it into ſquare.*
nahdem ih von ime verſtande, wi es herginge *or* wi vil di glokke geſlagen hatte.	*underſtanding by him, how the ſquares went.*

ih gebrauhe es notwendig.	*i ſtand in need of it.*
was habt ir (vor ein gemůt *or*) vor einen ſinn hirzu?	*how ſtands your mind to it?*
ſeinem verſprehen nah kommen; ſeine (zuſage *or*) worte halten.	*to ſtand to what one hath promiſed or ſaid.*
wegere dih niht (*or* beſinne dih niht lang) ſolhes zu duen.	*doe not ſtand upon it i. e. think much to doe it.*
es iſt ſeiner eren niht gemæs *or* anſtændig; ſeine würde læſset es niht zu.	*it ſtands not with his dignity or honour.*
wartet (meiner *or*) auf mih bei ir.	*ſtay for me with her.*
er læſset ſih nirgend niht authalten.	*he never ſtayes in any place.*
ſeine luſt iſt gebůſet; er hat ſeine begirden geſtillet.	*his ſtomach is ſtaid.*
er ziet gelindere sæiten auf.	*his ſtomach is come down.*
wenn ſi nah mir ſenden *or* ſhikken, ſo haltet mih niht auf.	*when i am ſent for, doe not make me ſtay.*
er beſanne (*or* bedahte) ſih eine gute weile hinn und her.	*he ſtood a good while at a ſtay.*
ih warte darauf.	*i ſtay for it.*
es wird euh zutræglih ſein.	*it will ſtand you in ſome ſtead.*
er iſt i'm œffentlihen dibſtale (ertappet *or*) ergriffen worden.	*he is taken ſtealing.*
mahet euh ja keine gedanken (*or* kein gewiſſen) darůber.	*never ſtick at it.*

er ſtekket inn gleiher nôt. — *he ſticks in the ſame mire.*
di hænde inn den ſhos legen; maul-affen feil haben; warten biſs eine gebratene taube in's maul flûget. — *to ſit ſtill and doe nothing.*
ih will euh das maul ſtopfen. — *i will ſtill your din i. make you hold your toung.*
ih kame (*or* ginge) mit keinem fuſse aus dem hauſe. — *i did not ſtir a-broad.*
ſi hilten euh nur vor einen narren *or*)ekken. — *they made a laugh-ing-ſtock of you.*
ih habe (niht groſen hunger *or*) keine lûſt zu eſsen. — *i have no great ſtomach.*
es war an allem ein (guter *or*) groſer vorrat da. — *there was a (good) ſtore of all things.*
ſnur-gleih nider *or*-auf. — *ſtraight down (or up) by a line.*
ih verwundere mih hœhlih darûber; es nimmet mih groſes wunder; es verwundert mih ſer. — *i ſtrange it.*
er iſt ein (poſsirliher, lœherliher, ſnakiſher *or*) wonderliher menſh, kauz, kœrl, geſell. — *he is a ſtrange fellow.*
o wunder! — *o ſtrange!*
ein groſer ſhritt. — *a huge ſtride.*
ſih ûberſhreiten; all-zu-weite ſhritte tuen (*or*) mahen. — *to take over-wide ſtrides.*
es ginge mir ſer nae *or* zu herzen *or* zu gemûte. — *it ſtruck me to the very heart.*
mitten (inn dem *or*) i'm Teutſh-lande. — *in the very heart (or in the midſt) of Germany.*
nah dem (kopfe *or*) haupte ſlagen *or* ziken. — *to ſtrike at (or to aime at) the head.*

einen (bund *or*) vertrag mit einem mahen *or* eingeen. — *to ſtrike a league (or a bargain) with one.*

ein groſes *or* hoes alter (*or* vil jare) auf ſih haben. — *to be ſtricken in years.*

hebe di beine auf! — *ſtir your ſtumps!*

er leget ſih auf di — heilige ſhrift. Rehte. arznei-konſt. welt-weisheit. rede-konſt. rehen-konſt. ſinge-konſt. u. ſ. f. — *he ſtudies — Divinity. the Law. Phyſick. Philoſophy. Oratory. Arithmetick. Muſick &c.*

um ein amt (*or* einen dinſt) anhalten; ſih um ein amt bewerben. — *to ſue for an office.*

einen verklagen *or* mit rehte belangen. — *to ſue one at law.*

er war mein bul; ih war ſeine libſte; er (bulete, loefelte) *or* freyete um mih; er kame zu mir auf di bulſhaft *or* freyereye. — *he was a ſuiter or a ſervant to me.*

ſi (namen *or*) litten ſhiff-bruh. — *they ſuffered ſhipwrack.*

es iſt inen niht (zugelaſen, vergœnnet *or*) verſtattet. — *they are not ſuffered.*

ſi kœnnen niht mit uns (*or* wir kœnnen niht mit inen) ſtallen *or* überein kommen. — *they ſuit not with our (or we doe not ſuit with their) temper, humour, nature, diſpoſition.*

ſeid ir deſſen (verſihert *or*) gewiſs? — *are you ſure of it?*

er ſae nihts denn ſæge-ſpæne. — *he ſaw nothing but ſaw-duſt.*

er ginge biſsweilen (ſneſl *or*) geſwinde, zu -zeiten aber langſam *or* laſset ſi (iren mut *or*) ir mûtgen bûſen.
einem den degen abnemen; einen werlos-mahen.
wollet ir ime glauben geben *or* zuſtellen? *or* wollet ir ſeinen worten trawen?
unreht von einem leiden.
nemet es von mir weg.
er ſlæget ſeinem vater nah; er iſt geartet wi ſein vater.
ſih vor einen gelærten ausgeben.
ſih an andere ſpigeln *or* keren.
einem eines hinter di oren verſezen *or* geben.
einen gefallen an etwas haben *or* tragen.
ſolhe ſahen gefallen dem volke.
was habet ir zu verrih -ten *or* zu ſhaffen?
ih habe keine herberge mer; ih kann nimann mer beherbergen; mein haus iſt ganz vermûtet.
ſeet ir mih vor ſo alber (*or* einfæltig) an?
ein wort ein mann.

his gate was ſome- times ſwift and ſome -times ſlow.
let them (her) take their (her) ſwing.
to take ones ſword from him; to disarme one.
will you (or doe you) take him at
his word?
to take wrong at one.
take it at me.
he takes after his fa- ther.
to take upon him to be a ſcholar.
to take example on others.
to take one a box on the ear.
to be taken with a thing.
theſe things take with the people.
what are you taken up withall?
my lodging is taken up.
doe you take me for ſuch a fool?
take my word.

für wen (haltet ir mih? *or*) ſeet ir mih an? haltet mih von ſolhen dingen ab.

whom doe you take me for? take me off from ſuch doings.

er ſprange ůber di neze or garne.

he took over the nets i. leapt clear or quite over.

er kerete da ein; er ſluge allda ſein lager auf.

he took up his lodging there.

zuůuht bei einem nemen.

to take ſanctuary.

er geet *or* ſizet (oben an *or*) auf der rehten ſeiten, hand; er nimmet di eren-ſtelle ein.

he takes the upper hand or the wall.

mann konte di erſlagenen kaum zælen.

the number of the ſlain could hardly be taken.

ſih etwas zum ſhůmpfe anzien.

to take a thing as done in deſpite to him ſelf.

wi ih dafůr halte; wi mih bedůnket; wi mir es vorkœmmet.

as i take it.

laſset uns luſtwandeln.

let us take a walk.

zu pferde (zu wagen *or* zu kutſhe) geen.

to take horſe, coatch or wagon.

es iſt ein bloſes (gewæſh, geſwæz *or*) geplauder.

it is a very tale, mere tales all.

er kann niht ſagen, welher von den beiden (*or* unter den zweyen) es ſei.

he can not tell which is which or whether of theſe two.

als das gelt aufgezælet wurde.

as the money was a telling.

es wurde mir von ime geſaget *or* erzælet.

i was told (or it was told me) by or of him.

bei zeiten; zu rehter zeit; eben zu gewůnſhter zeit.

in time; in very good time; in pud -ding time.

ir kommet zu ſpæte *you come out of time*
or zu langſam. *or too late.*
ſi hatte niht lange mer *ſhe was near her*
zu geen *or* zu warten. *time.*
als ire zeit kame, ſo *ſhe went to her*
gelage ſi. *time.*
vor undenklihen jaren, *time out of*
zeiten. *mind.*
dazumal; zu der zeit. *at that time.*
ir wuſtet euh inn di *you knew how to*
zeit zu ſhikken. *make uſe of your time.*
zwei jünglinge faſt ein *two youngmen much*
-es alters. *of one time.*
es ſei dann (*or* i'm falle) *without you be told*
daſs mann es euh hund- *it an hundred times*
ert mal fürſaget *or* fürkanet. *over.*
ſi ſteinigten mih; ſi *they threw ſtones*
warfen mih mit ſtein- *at me.*
en; ſi warfen ſteine auf mih *or* nah mir.
er wirfet (*or* wirft) uns *he throws* (*u in*
des Keuſers tod fir; *the teeth with Ce-*
er rükket (*or* muzet) *ſars death*; *or*) *Ce-*
uns des Keiſers *ſars death in*
tod auf. *our teeth.*
ih muſs von etwas an- *i muſt turn my taung*
ders reden. *i. e. talk of ſomewhat elſe.*
es entfile ime di ſprah *his tuung faild*
-e; er blibe inn der rede ſtekken. *him.*
ih wolte, daſs er ſih *i would have him*
ein wenig i'm rehte *have a little touch*
umſæe. *of the law.*
ih will ime einen wakk *i will ſerve him*
-ren poſten beweiſen. *a cunning trick.*
mihleiden mit einem tragen. *to pity one.*

ih handelte ja als ein kihtfærtiger vogel *or* erenvergeſsener ſhelm, wenn ih es dæte.

it were but the trick of a baſe knave in me, if i ſhould doe it.

er liſe ſih's ganz niht anſehten.

he was not a whit troubled at it.

gerewet in nun (di dat? *or*) daſs er's getan?

is he now troubled at what he has done?

es verdreuſt (*or* kræncket) mih von herzen *or* heftig.

it (vexes or) troubles me; i am very much (vexed or) troubled at it.

es plaget in di zanwœe; di wœtagen der zæne plagen in; er iſt mit den zænē geplaget.

he is troubled with the tooth-ache.

es iſt di lautere warheit; es iſt all-zu-war.

it is (moſt or) very true; 'tis too true.

laſset uns Gott dem Herren danken *or* dankſagen.

let us give God thanks.

es wird entweder zu regen oder zu winde; es wird entweder regen oder wind daraus.

it turnes either to rayn or to wind.

ein buh aus dem Grih iſhen in's Latein überſezen *or* überbringen.

to turn a book out of Greek into Latin.

er hat alles verkeret; er hat das unterſte zu œberſt gekeret.

he has turned all things upſide down or topſie turvy.

wehſelweiſe; einer um den andern.

by turns.

einem boeſes mit gutem vergelten.

to doe a good turn for an evil one.

ſi verkiſen meine freind ſhaft.

they turn'd their (back or) tail on my freindſhip.

ſtoſet in zum hauſe hinaus; ſlaget im' di dûre vor'n ars.

kick (or turn) him out of dores.

zwei oder drei male (auf-und-ab *or*) auf- und nider-geen.	*to take two or three turns.*
haltet den dib auf.	*turn (ſtop) the thief.*
auf di hinter-beine treten *i.* læugnen was mann geſaget.	*to turn cat in the pan, or to ſay and unſay.*
ih habe i vil (*or* zu ider zeit groſe ſtükken) auf euh gehalten.	*i have ever ſet a great value upon you.*
was gedenket ir, (daſs ih wol darnah frage? *or)* wi hoh ih es halte	*what doe you thinke i value it at?*
etwas inn di ſhanze ſlagen *or* auf das glükke wagen.	*to put things to a venture.*
auf das ungewiſse.	*at a venture.*
er wird ſeinen vater (verderben *or*) an den bettel-ſtab bringen.	*he will undoe his father or bring him to beggary.*
eine gelübte duen.	*to make a vow.*
warzu?	*for what uſe?*
wi er pfleget.	*as he uſes.*
ih dærfte bald (wetten, eine wette legen *or)* etwas verwetten.	*i durſt lay a wager.*
ih will mit euh wetten was ir wollet.	*i will lay you (or with you) any wager.*
einen bekrigen; mit einem krig anfangen.	*to make (or to wage) war upon (againſt or with) one.*
ih hærme mih ganz ab; ih bekümmere mih ſo, daſs ih ganz verfalle *or* abneme.	*i waſte or pine (i. am waſted or pined) away with grief.*
wahinnaus? weihet	*which way? out of*

mir aus! mahet raum! aus'm wege! — *my way! give way! turn away!*

das leder gibet nah. — *the leather gives way.*

ein wüſtes (*or* œdes) land. — *a waſte ground.*

beſmuztes papir *or* maculatur. — *waſte paper.*

er nimmet ſi bei der mitte. — *he takes her about the waſte.*

er liſe es an gutem will -en niht ermangeln. — *he wanted no good will.*

ſi haben ſhon di anker aufgezogen *or* aufgehoben. — *they have already weighed anchor.*

ewere brife gelten mæhtig (*or* rihten vil aus) bei mir. — *your letters weigh very much with me.*

er iſt niht (wol *or*) reht bei ſinnen. — *he is not well in his wits.*

ih habe euh zu lib *or* zu wert. — *i love you soo too (or but too) well.*

er will euh wol; er iſt euh gœnſtig *or* geneigt. — *he wiſhes you well.*

willkommen von der reiſe! ewere ankunft iſt mir lib! — *wellcome home or to the town.*

er (bewirtete, empfinge *or*) bewillkommete mih ſtattlih. — *he made me very well -come.*

wenn es nah meinem kopfe (*or* ſinne) geen ſolte. — *if i might have my will.*

ſi ſind ganz von der hitzhen kommen; ſi nagen an dem hunger-tuhe. — *they are (quite down the wind, or) behind hand in the world.*

ih verwondere mih ganz und gar niht darüber. — *i make no wonder at all (of it, or) at it.*

ih weis niht was ih doh — *i know not what in*

immermer mahen ſoll.	*the world to doe.*
glůkk auf (di reiſe!	*i wiſh you (welcome!*
or) den weg!	*a good voyage! or) a good journey!*
ih bedanke mih freind	*i thanke you (hear-*
-lih *or* zu'm ſhœnſten.	*tily or) kindly.*
ih befare (mih,) wir	*i am afraid, we ſhall*
werden (den kůrzern	*(come by the worſt*
zien, *or*) zu kurz	*of it) be worſted or*
kommen.	*be put to the worſt.*
næmlih; namentlih.	*to wit; viz.*
di land-(*or* hær-) ſtraſe.	*the highway.*
was wollet ir bei mir	*what would you*
haben?	*with me?*
ih will meinen zorn (*or*	*i will wreak my*
grimm)ůber ſi ausſhitten.	*teen on them.*
ęr will alles eingeen;	*he is willing to yield*
er will mit allem zu friden ſein.	*to any thing.*
er wolte ſih niht geben.	*he would not yield.*
was hůlfet es euh, daſs	*what are you the (bet-*
ir glůkkſelig, niht a-	*ter or) nearer for be*
ber weiſe ſeid?	*-ing fortunate and not wiſe?*
er hat mit einem ſih	*he has fought a*
(auf den tegen) geſlagen.	*duell.*
es iſt vergebens, daſs	*there is no keeping*
mann ein ſloſs wolle	*(of) a lock for that*
vor der dire ligend	*dore, which everyone*
haben, warzu ein id-	*has a key (to)*
weder einen ſlůſsel (*or* ditrig) hat.	*for.*
er gedahte, er wůr-	*he thought, he ſhould*
de (ſterben můſsen (*or*) drauf geen.	*have died.*
er iſt mir unbekand.	*he is a ſtranger to me.*
ih bin der ſahen	*i am a ſtranger*
ein kind.	*of it.*
ih wolte, daſs ir euh	*i would have you*

vor einen ſolhen ausgæbet. — owne your ſelf to be ſuch a one.
ſi date einen fæil-tritt; ſi trate fæil. — ſhe miſsed her ſtep.
er hat des jares hundert ducaten ein-zu kommen. — he is worth a year fifty pound.
di ſhuld iſt ewer. — it is long of you.
es ſoll an mir niht mangeln or ermangeln. — it ſhall not be long of me.
es werden allerhand vorbereitung zu ſeiner hohzeit gemahet. — ſeverall preparations are making for his marriage.
er weis ſeine fûſse fein (wol or artig) zu ſezen. — he makes a hand-ſome leg.
di milh krihet alle in's brot. — the bread drinks (or ſucks) all the milk.
eine zuvor getragene mûze. — a cap at ſecond hand.
der (ſharf or) nah-riht er name ir di (flor-) kappe (or haube) ab. — the head-(or hang-) man took her the hood off.
ſi iſt (zu'm tode) verurteilet; das reht iſt ûber ſi geſprohen; der ſtab iſt ûber ſi gebrohen. — the law is paſsed upon her.
ee di breiten hûte aufkamen. — before broad hats came into faſhion.
ein fas (inn das andere) abzyen. — to cut one veſsel off into an other.
der ſtifelſhaft reihet weiter niht dann biſs an ſeine wade. — the top of the boot reaches no farther then the calf of his leg.
wilſt du das jenige (mir ausreden or) verlæugnen, was ih doh (ſelb- — will you (face me down or) outface me of that, which

ſelbſt *or*) mit meinen *my ſelf ſawe juſt now?*
eigenen augen gleih izo angeſeen habe?
er iſt der aller beſte *he is the beſt ring-*
glokken-ſpiler inn der *er in all the town.*
ganzen ſtatt. ein ringer. *a wraſtler.*
er redet one allen *he ſpeakes no ſenſe*
verſtand. *at all.*
es hat ſaft und kraft *he writes a very good*
(or hænde und füſse*)* was er ſhreibet. *ſenſe.*
es hat (einerlei ver- *it comes to one*
ſtand *or*) eben diſe meinung. *ſenſe.*
es erbitterte *(or* ver- *it did galle me to the*
droſse) mih i'm herzen drinne. *heart.*
vollenziet meinen(will *put my will in*
-en *or*) befel. *act.*
ewer geheis iſt geſchehen. *you are obeyed.*
das wetter erſtuge *lightning blaſted*
ſi alle. *them all.*
ſie dih nah einem kwer *look for a ſide-*
-ſattel um. laſs einen *ſaddle! call for a*
ſænften-træger herkomaien! *chearman!*
will er *(or* ſi) ſih *(or will you be pleaſed*
ir) beliben laſsen auf *to mounte the*
das bei pferd zu ſteigen? *leadhorſe?*
diſer fluſs (ergeuſet *this river is very*
ſih bald *or*) dritt gar *apt to overflowe*
leihtlih aus ſeinem ufer. *its banks.*
warum faret ir mih ſo *why doe you fly out*
græſslih an? wi farz- *into ſuch-a paſſion*
et ir ſo auf? *againſt me?*
immer und ewig; *for ever and ever;*
von ewigkeit zu *world without*
ewigkeit. *end.*

er weis ſih gar vil (*or* pranget) mit ſeinem miſthaufen. *he is proud of his dunghill.*
ih werde meinen diner abſhaffen *or* enturlauben. *i ſhall turne off my man.*
ir mann iſt um's (*or* um eines) kopfes længer. *her husband is taller by the head.*
er hat (ein *or*) ſein eigen haus. *he hath a houſe of his own.*
er redet in's gelag hinnein. *he ſpeakes at randome.*
di bæume ſlagen aus. *the trees ſtring forth.*
wer da eer kœmt, der mælet eer; der erſte geet vor. *he, that comes firſt, is ſerved firſt.*
diſer grobe gEſell und ungehœbelte flegel hat keinen erlihen blutstropfen (*or* keine redlihe ader) inn ſeinen ganzem leibe. *that rude and clownish fellow has not ſo much as the ſmall-eſt aire of an honeſt man with-in him.*
er iſt eine feihe marme; er hat kein herz i'm leibe. *he has not the ſmalleſt aire of (a) man within him.*
wann er ſeine ſnauze (mit bire) begoſſen hat, ſo læſet er den haſen mit dem narrenſæile laufen und briht einen zank von idwedem zaune. *when he is in (drink or) beer, all muſt out of the fool, and the drunken ſot picks a quarrell at never ſo ſmall a triſle.*
ih will (niht einen ſhritt fort geen *or*) weder weihen noh wanken. *i will not ſtirre.*
ſo du wirſt nur einen fuſs fort ſezen, ſo will ih dih bei'm lebendigen leibe ſhinden. *if you ſtirre but an inch, i will flea you alive.*
ih will euh anhelfen. *i will preferre you.*

ir ſeet (ſer) fein aus.	*you look (very) well.*
duet andern was ir von	*doe as you would*
inen begeret.	*be done by others.*
mit verleyung gœtt-	*by the grace of*
liher genaden.	*God.*
wir von Gottes gnaden.	*we by the grace of God.*
verzeyet mir, daſs ih	*pardon my interrup-*
euh inn (ewere rede *or*)	*tion; pray! give me*
di rede falle.	*leav to ſpeake.*
es hat uns imann be-	*we are overheard*
horhet *or* zu gehœret.	*by ſome.*
ſo bald als — —	*no ſooner than —*
es iſt (ganz und gar	*the trade is dead.*
keine narung *or*) weder handel noh wandel.	
ih ſtelle es inen ver-	*i leave it to them*
nünftig bei ſih zu be-	*in cold blood to*
trahten anheim.	*conſider.*
unter hundert vætern	*what father of an*
iſt niht einer, der —	*hundred is there that*
ih habe mih erkæltet;	*i have (got or) caught*
di kælte iſt mir inn den leib geſlagen.	*cold.*
ih will mih ſhon ſelbſt	*i will be my own*
bezalet mahen.	*paymaſter.*
ir lauſet ſo geſwinde,	*you walk at ſuch a*
daſs ih euh niht (einholen *or*) ereilen kann.	*rate, i can not o-vertake you.*
ir ſollet eine weile	*you ſhall be ſtay*
warten.	*enough.*
ir habt euh niht ge-	*you are all*
waſhen darzu.	*like.*
er lekkete di finger	*his chaps watered*
nah mir.	*as me.*
ir ſwizet (über und	*you are all*
über *or*) als ein braten.	*of a ſweat.*

ir ſeid ganz über und über heis; ir brœnnet an eurem ganzen leibe.
you are all of a heat.

wann ih mit euh rede, ſolſt es eben ſo vil, als ob euh eine gans anziſhete.
when i ſpeake to you, you doe not minde me at all.

warauf ſinnet ir? wa ſind ewere gedanken?
what are you thinking on?

lhittet ewer herz aus vor einem freinde.
unboſome your ſelf to a friend.

wen redet ir an? er wolte ſih durhaus niht abweiſen laſsen.
whom doe you ſpeake to? he would not be denied.

ſein mütigen zu külen, ſeine luſt zu büſsen.
for ſatisfaction of his mind. for ſatisfaction of his luſt.

er ware blind - voll; er war ſo voll als ein ſwein.
he was as drunk as a wheelbare; he was bloody drunk.

ſi hatten zu halben u. zu ganzen getronken.
they had been high a-drinking.

wer wolte ſih niht inn ein ſolh' artlihes ſhelmgen verliben?
who would not fall in love with ſuch a ſmack-faced rogue?

ir haſeliret trefflih.
you are fool to the high.

er iſt ſhon über alle berge und niht met zu ſeen.
he is gone and paſt ſight.

ir habet wunderlihe (*or* ſeizame) einfælle.
you hold ſtrange arguments.

er hinterſlihe mih.
he did ſteale upon me.

mann kann euh nihts reht genug mahen; ir wollet alles zu (eben *or*) genawe haben.
you are too hard to pleaſe or to be pleaſed.

allezeit über'n andern tag.
every each day.

er ginge den kræbs-	*he played the rop-*
gang *or* hinterrüks.	*maker i. wend backward.*
ih iſt vortrefflih ge-	*ſhe goes, as though*
ſchmükket und aufge-	*ſhe would ſell*
ſwænzet.	*herſelf.*
ih will (mih ewer durh	*i will not owne*
-aus niht anmaſen *or*)	niht einmal *you.*
ſagen, daſs ir mein ſeid	*or* mir zu gehœret.
ir habt's (erraten *or*)	*you are in the right*
getroffen.	*of it.*
es færet ime zuweil-	*he takes ſome time*
en eine freude inn	*or other a*
di ahſel.	*frolick.*
was für ein alberer	*ſilly fool that i was,*
narr (*or* einfæltiger	*i gave him to*
tropf) war ih, daſs	*much bead!*
ih ime ſo vil (nahliſe, einræumete *or*) nahſæl	
dem teufel i'm bette	*to be ſtewing a-bed*
einen braten wenden	*till noon.*
biſs mann mit den tellern zu tiſhe lætet.	
friſh obeſt labet ein-	*new fruit is refreſh-*
en des morgens.	*ing in a morning.*
er læſset ſeinen hut ver	*he gets his hat*
-bræmen *or* einfaſsen.	*edged.*
der neidiſhe tadeler zi	*the dogged carver (or*
-jet alles durh ſeine	*Momus) carpes at*
hehel.	*all things.*
Gott lob und dank!	*thanks to God!*
lang lebe der Kœnig!	*God (bleſse,*
Gott erhal-	*ſpare or)*
te den Kœnig!	*ſave the King!*